


BM 550 . N323 L4 1908
Nathanael ben Fayyumi, 12th cent.
The Bustan al-ukul

## THE BUSTAN AL-UKUL

## COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY ORIENTAL STUDIES Vol. VI.

THE BUSTAN AL-UKUL<br>By Nathanael ibn al-Fayyumi<br>EDITED AND TRANSLATED FROM AN UNIQUE MANUSCRIPT IN THE LIBRARY OF COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY<br>BY<br>David Levine, Ph. D.




\author{
Natu 㖥ark <br> THE COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY PRESS <br> 1908 <br> ```
All rights reserved

```
}

By The Columbia University Press
Set up and electrotyped. Published, January, rgo8.

\section*{NOTE}

Very little is known of the intellectual life of the Jews living in Southern Arabia. A good deal of their literature has perished, and their continuel struggles with poverty and oppression have not been favorable to the developement of literary activity. The only attempts we know of to produce a systematic treatise on Jewish theology is "The Garden of Wisdom" of Nathan'el al Fayyumi who lived in the twelfth century. Some years ago the Library of the Columbia University came into possession of a unique manuscript of this work, written in Yemenite Hebrew characters. Dr. David Levine has in the present volume edited the text of this work and provided the same with a translation.

Under ordinary circumstances the editing of an Arabic work from a single manuscript is a hazardous undertaking. The pitfalls into which the editor may slip are so numerous as to deter any one but a most courageous scholar. In the present case the difficulties are enhanced by the fact that the Arabic is written with Hebrew characters-as was often the case when Jews wrote in Arabic. This use of foreign characters often does apparent violence to the morphology and syntax of the language, and makes it difficult to recognize forms in their unaccustomed dress. The author was not a man of much literary ability. He writes in a somewhat slovenly style, and his scribe seems at times not to have understood what he wrote down, so that the manuscript fairly teams with errors. Both author and scribe were careless also of their Biblical quotations. These have not always been corrected, in order not to unduly increase the notes. Dr. Levine has worked with much assiduity to solve the various difficulties, though he recognizes that a number still remain unexplained.

It must be noted that in the use of the Hebrew alphabet the scribe employs "Sade" for both Arabic "Dad" and
"Tha". The letter "Gimel" without a point stands for the Arabic "Jim"; the same letter with a point superimposed for Arabic "Ghain". In order to accommodate the reader and to follow the practice common in printed works of this character, the order has been reversed, the pointed "Gimel" representing "Jim" and the unpointed representing "Ghain".

In establishing the text and in perfecting the translation, both Dr. Levine and myself wish to acknowledge the assistance given by Mr. I. Broydé, who has put his excellent knowledge of this literature at our entire disposal.

RICHARD GOTTHEIL.

\section*{TRANSLATOR'S INTRODUCTION}

\section*{I}

\section*{The Yemenite Jews Prior To 1175}

Jews probably settled in Yemen in Biblical times. The favorable position of south-western Arabia for commercial purposes must have fairly thrust itself upon the attention of a people who in the days of Solomon pushed their way even to Spain. \({ }^{1}\) In the course of time the Jewish population assumed such proportions and their religion became so highly esteemed that King Abu Kariba and all his people embraced Judaism (500 C. E.). In 515 Abu Kariba was succeeded by his son Yusuf, known usually as Dhu Nuwas. The fate of this king and his realm is set forth as follows in the Jewish Encyclopaedia:
"His zeal for Judaism brought about his fall. Having heard of the persecutions of the Jews by the Byzantine emperors he retaliated by putting to death some Byzantine merchants who were travelling on business through Himyara. This destroyed the trade of Yemen with Europe and involved Dhu Nuwas in a war with the heathen king Aidug whose commercial interests were injured thereby. Dhu Nuwas was defeated (52I) but succeeded in re-establishing his kingdom. Soon, however, he entangled himself in a new difficulty. He made war against the Christian city Najran, in Yemen, which was a dependency of his kingdom, and on its capitulation, in spite, it is said, of his promise of immunity from punishment, he offered the citizens the alternative of embracing Judaism or being put to death. As they refused to renounce their faith he executed their chief, Harith (Aretas) ibn Kaleb and three hundred and forty chosen men. This event caused a great stir among the Christians; and the Roman emperor, Justin I, requested the Negus Elezbaa of Ethiopia to march against the Jewish king. Accordingly an Ethiopian army crossed the Red Sea to Yemen.

\footnotetext{
1. Jewish Quanterly Revicw', vol. III., p. 624.
}

Dhu Nuwas endeavored unsuccessfully to prevent its landing. The ensuing engagement terminated disastrously for Dhu Nuwas. His city of Zafora (Thafar), together with his queen and the treasure, fell into the hands of the enemy. Preferring death to capture, Dhu Nuwas rode into the sea and was drowned." \({ }^{1}\)

Again the Yemenite Jews appear upon the stage of history, when in common with their brethern elsewhere in Arabia, they refused to countenance the pretensions of Mohammed ( \(575-632\) ) and subjected his Kuran to a derisive criticism. They suffered so heavily in the ensuing conflict that they were practically lost to recorded history for about five hundred and fifty years. \({ }^{2}\)

Once more the curtain rises in 1172 revealing a community writhing under the cruel heel of religious persecution. The governor of Yemen had rebelled against Saladin, Sultan of Egypt, and now was in possession of the province. Being intensely intolerant of any faith other than Islam, he repeated the story of persecution enacted by Abdullah ibn Tumart in Barbary in 1122 and by Abdul Mumin in Andalusia in 1148. In his effort to obliterate the name of Israel he was aided by a renegade Jew, Samuel ibn Abbas, who fulminated against his brethern and their faith in a book written sometime between 1165 and 1172 . The persecution was becoming acute when an enthusiast proclaimed himself the precursor of the Messiah about to appear in Yemen. The rebellion might have gotten beyond the stage of incipency had not the luckless Elijah paid for his zeal with his life. Moreover, thenceforth there was to be no alternative but Islam or exile. The head of Yemenite Jewry, Rabbi Jacob ben Nathanel ben Fayyumi, and his faithful followers were in utter despair. What should be done to preserve the ancient heritage of Israel? Providentiallv thore was at hand a disciple of Maimonides, Solomon ha-Cohen, who had but recently arrived from Cairo. At his suggestion Rabbi Jacob wrote for counsel to the sage of Cordova, then physician at the court of Saladin. \({ }^{3}\) The response of Maimonides was the famous Epistle to Yemen (Kitab al-Yaman or Iggereth Teman) in which
\({ }_{1}\) 1) The Jewish Encyclopedia, vol. IV., p. 553.
2. Graetz: Geschichte der Juden, vol. VI., 296 ff.
- Lichtenberg: Responsa of Rambam II., p. 7.
his brethren were " consoled, assured that they were being tried by God, that they should by all means remain loyal to Judaism, that the Messiah will come but his advent cannot be calculated, that the Law will never be abrogated and that the Creator will never send another Law besides that vouchsafed to Israel. But Maimonides did not restrict his services to words. He turned his growing influence in Cairo to account, and when in 1174 Saladin's brother assumed the reins of government in Yemen, the material condition of the Jews followed their spiritual condition on the road to better things. In the daily Glorification Prayer (Kaddish) the grateful Yemenites included a complimentary allusion to Maimonides." \({ }^{1}\)
Yellin and Abrahams, Maimonides, p. 105.

\section*{ERRATA}
p. v, l. 3 continual ; 1. 4 development; 1. 5 attempt; 1.24 teems; p. xiii, l. II, II50; p. xv, l. 33 the intensity; p. 2, 1. 28 occupies; p. 3, 1. 2 intelligencies ; 1. 27 sanctuary; p. 4, l. 23 correspond; p. \(5,1.28\) matters ; p. II, 1. 25 does not contain ; p. 25, 1. II Tiberias ; p. 26, 1. I8 betrothal ; p. 27, 1. 32 Sh'moa; p. 30, note 5, l. II nineteen; p. 31, note 12 Sprenger; p. 35, 1. 37 her; p. 37, 1, 29 knowledge, good deeds and generous hospitality. This is also expressed in the sentiment. p. \(38,1.30\) is six hundred ; p. 41, 1. 30 of whom; 1. 32 following; p. 42, 1. 20 its extreme side; p. 44, l. 8 logicians; p. 47, 1. II prescience; p. 52, 1. 23 reveres; p. 53, 1. Io eschews; p. 59, 1. I4 Shekhinah; 1. 15 through; 1. 31 His; p. 61, l. 3 iniquity ; p. 63, 1. 15 wouldst; it would make; p. 64, l. 3 of those ; p. 69 , note 3 particle ; p. 76, 1. I9 comprehend; p. 81, note I wrestled; Esau; p. 89, l. 33 embellishment; p. 90, l. 36 abandons; p. 91, 1. 23 regardless; p. 92, 1. 22 upon; p. 96, 1. 15 but the eyes of the unbelievers; p. \(104,1.36\) judgments; p. 106, 1. 4 father; p. 107, 1. 9 unto the name; l. II Law; p. Io9, l. I5 al-Lat; l. 20 directed; p. irio, l. Io be apportioned; 1. 30 should come after l. 32 ; p. II2, l. 3 shall I; 1. 15 Hallewi ; p. II9, note, male; p. I35, l. I3 he that walketh without blame; p. I38, I. 6 we ask help.

\section*{II}

\section*{Nathanel and His Book}

The father of the rabbi to whom Maimonides addressed the Iggereth Teman was none other than the author of the Bustan al-Ukul, Nathanel ben al-Fayyumi. The clue to this identity is furnished by a poem of Ibn Gebirol (1020-1070) quoted in the "Bustan." In this effusion the poet laments that "Ishmael slew and devastated for four hundred and sixty-one years." Remembering that the Mohammedan era begins in the year 622 and that the calendar of Islam, being purely lunar, loses cleven days for every solar year, we readily determine the date of the poem \(622+461-14=1069\), evidently falling in the lifetime of Ibn Gebirol. Nathanel quotes that " Ishmael slew and devastated for five hundred and fifty-nine years." \({ }^{1}\) This would set the date as \(622+559-16=1165\), almost a century after the death of the famous poet and philosopher. Hence it is clear that Nathanel made the substitution consciously to bring the poem down to his own day to which it applied with so much force. The "Bustan" is thus the oldest Jewish Yemenite work extant.

In the Iggereth Maimonides incidentally speaks of Nathanel as no longer living - " the highly honored master and rabbi, Nathanel (of blessed memory) bar Fayyumi." \({ }^{2}\)

Since the "Bustan" was written in 1165 and the Iggereth in 1172 our author must have died within seven years after the composition of his work. He probably lived in Sana'a as the head of the Jewish community and at his death was succeeded by his son, Jacob. The patronimic Al-Fayyumi would indicate that the family came originally from the Fayyum in Egypt, the birthplace of the father of Jewish philosophy, Saadiah Gaon.

The sources of the Bustan may, for convenience, be divided into the Jewish and the non-Jewish.

After the fashion of many mediaeval Jewish writers on philosophical and ethical subjects, Nathanel resorts to the Bible

1 Bustan, p. 7 I .
\(\therefore\) Lichtenberg: Responsa of Rambam II., p. 1.
not as a well-spring of science but merely for the confirmation of philosophic views already established. \({ }^{1}\) Other Jewish works quoted are the Talmud and Teshuboth (Responses), the poetical works of Shelomo Hakatan (Ibn Gebirol) and Yehudah Halewi, Saadiah's al-Amanat and Bachya's Hoboth Hallebaboth. There is no evidence to prove that Nathanel even knew of Ibn Gebirol's Fons Vitae or Joseph ibn Zaddik's Olam Katan. The resemblances are due to the fact that all three authors had recourse to the same treasure-house, the Encyclopaedia of the Brethren of Sincerity (Ihwan as-Safa) \({ }^{2}\)

The non-Jewish sources are represented by the Koran, the utterances of numerous anonymous poets and "pious men," and the Encyclopaedia. With the proverbial Yemenite weakness for omitting names Nathanel never mentions the Ihwan as such but refers to them as "the philosophers," \({ }^{3}\) "the learned," "the authors who have a firm footing in science," etc.

Nathanel intended the "Bustan" to be a popular introduction to Jewish theology, a " compendium for our youth and for any of our brethren into whose hand it may fall." \({ }^{4}\) He therefore strove to make it simple, studiously avoiding arguments profound or abstract. For the philosophic and scientific basis of his work he betook himself to the Encyclopaedia of the Brethren. This compilation was " the best articulated statement of a system that furnished a complete scheme of education, or of man's true relation to the universe, that enabled him that received it to lead a perfectly rational, aimful, and, therefore, free life." This system he enlisted in the service of Judaism. The head was to serve as the gateway to the heart. Among the Jews of Yemen he probably represents the last exponent of the doctrines of the Brethren of Sincerity. He was not the great master who develops a system to its highest point, leaving nothing for his followers to add, but he took that system as he found it and made it what it was intended to be-an angel of light.

1 For this practice of Mediaeval Jewish ethical and philosophical writers cf. Bacher's Bibeleregese der Religionsp'ilosophen vor Maimuni.
\({ }^{3}\) Ibn Zaddik, Moses ibn Ezra and Bachya did likewise: Doctor, Ibn Zaddik, p. 12.
- The full text of the Ihwan as-Safa has been published in Bombay, 1303-1306 A. H. Beginning in 1865, Fr. Dieterici has published portions of the text in Arabic and a condensed German translation of many of the treatises. For details see Brockelmann, Geschichte der Arabischen Literatur, i. pp. 213 et seq.
- Bustan, p. 2.

\section*{The Yemenite Jews in the Days of Nathanel}

The political condition of the Yemenite Jews at this time was far from pleasant. The yoke of the Islamic rulers lay heavily upon them, and unceasingly did they yearn for the advent of that scion of David who was to chastise their oppressors and restore the foot-sore tribe to its ancient power and glory. The Mohammedan Yemenites were wont to taunt the Jews that the Torah had been abrogated in favor of the Koran. \({ }^{1}\) Spirited arguments would ensue which, judging from the "Bustan," usually ended with a logical victory for the Jews. It was but a continuation of the old contest between the founder of Islam and " the People of the Book."

The "Bustan," furthermore, throws some light upon the education of the Yemenite Jew. This education was to be no mere ornament, nor the acquisition thereof merely a pleasant pastime. " O seeker of wisdom, seize it in spite of its opposition, and know that the meadow of learning is divided up by streams." The processes involved in the acquisition of knowledge were regarded as four: attention, retention in memory, the practical application of one's knowledge and the diffusion thereof. Facts were thus to become factors. "Knowledge is a cost and a care to him that fails to act through it."-"Learning is the parent and the deed is the child."-" Learning is a tree and the deed is its fruit."-"Learning must be the inspiration to a deed, otherwise it escapes us." \({ }^{3}\) The spirit of this education was thus in harmony with that of our own times. Under brighter political and social conditions the splendor of Jewish achievements in Moorish Spain might have been rivalled by that in South-western Arabia. But the sun of the Andalusian Jews failed to rise for their brethren of Yemen.

Some of the elements of their general education may be inferred from Nathanel's exhortation that we consider what
\({ }^{1}\) Bustan, p. 67. ' Bustan, p. ふ0. * Bustan, p. 30.

God has vouchsafed unto man in the way of knowledge, enabling him to "evolve writing, the reading of books, the composition of verses, polite literature and commentaries, the cultivation of letter-writing and eloquence, and the study of history according to years, genealogies, dynasties, and the conjunction of the planets." \({ }^{1}\) The statement of Maimonides in his epistle to the Jews of Lunel that the Jews of Yemen knew "little of the Talmud, being acquainted only with the Agadic exposition," \({ }^{2}\) is borne out by the general tenor of the Bustan whenever reference is made to the Talmud. These people were not of the type of Rashi (1040-1150) for whom Judaism as represented by the Bible and the Talmud was the all in all; nor of the type of Maimonides who would examine and interpret his faith in the light of Aristotle; but devout worshippers at the shrine of the then dominant philosophy, the eclecticism of the Brethren of Sincerity. Therefore, aside from the mastery of the Bible, the Agadic portions of the Talmud, various Midrashim, the ceremonials of the faith, a few Jewish philosophical works, the writings of poets and ascetics, and the elements noted above, the higher education of the Yemenite Jew consisted in a thorough knowledge of the Encyclopaedia and the application of this knowledge to daily conduct and to the understanding of the " mysteries" contained in the Scriptures. He sought to realize clearly that God, the One, must be unconditionally isolated in order to obtain an ultimate unity of all distinctions and antitheses, in which, therefore, all difference must vanish in pure simplicity of being. This simple Unity could not be identified with Reason, for in Reason is the antithesis of thought and its object. He then looked upon all things external to this pure Unity as a series of emanations. From the unconditioned, absolute One emanated the Universal Reason which is the final source of all existents, celestial and terrestial. From the over-flow of the Intellect issued forth the Universal Soul, the origin and goal of the partial souls which exist in the world of nature. From the Universal Soul there also emanated primal matter, and from it in turn secondary or

\footnotetext{
12 Bustan, p. 47.
* Graetz: Geschichte III., p. 492.
}
tri-dimensional matter, i. e. Body. Then successively, one from the uther, appeared nature-sub-lunary and transient-the four elements, and lastly things or products. This streaming forth of the emanations was off-set by a streaming back of these forces to the primal force. This was conceived spatially as taking place from the middle point of the earth to the stars, i. e., through the minerals to plants, then to animal, man and angel. The abode of the last was the All-soul. The aspiration of the human soul appeared to be to find its way back to this source. The world, as it was then understood, offered ample testimony to the soundness of these Neoplatonic, soul-satisfying teachings. Under the sphere of the moon there exist minerals, plants, and animals. The highest type of mineral is moss which partakes also of the qualities of plant life. The noblest species of the plants is the palm which shares certain qualities with animal forms of life: the pollen of the male fertilizes the female, otherwise no fruit will be produced; and when the head is lopped off, the tree dies. Likewise in the animal kingdom there is the ape which also belongs to the same class of creatures as man. This transition from mineral to plant, from plant to lower animal, and from the last to man suggested the inference that in the genus man there must be a species resembling the higher genus, the angels. This species consists of the prophets and their disciples. These disciples are the learned and the wisethe noblest of men. In this world they are angels potentially; and when God translates them to the Glorious Dwelling they become angels in actuality. This Glorious Dwelling is the AllSoul. Thus man mounted the heavens, carried thither upon the wings of the Arabic doctrine of evolution. "This doctrine hardly differs from the Darwinian except in not recognizing the struggle for life as an agent in the process; the older theory putting instead of this the natural desire of all things to return to their sources." \({ }^{1}\)

In imparting knowledge, a carcful distinction was made between the exoteric and the esoteric. The latter was reserved exclusively for the select few esteemed worthy of it and capable
of grasping it. These constituted the class known as "the learned, the heirs of the prophets. This designation-" the heirs of the prophets"-had profound significance for the Yemenite Jews as well as for the great body of their brethren throughout the world. According to the Jewish view of those days, all the science and philosophy then known had been originally taught by the prophets of old. Unfortunately, this knowledge had been embodied in the oral tradition which was to remain unwritten, \({ }^{1}\) and as a consequence it was almost wholly lost during the various cataclysms of Jewish history. This belief can be traced as far back as the Alexandrian Aristobulus. Philo Judaeus ( 20 B. C. 40 C. E.) and Josephus (37-95), \({ }^{2}\) Yehudah Halevi \({ }^{3}\) Maimonides \({ }^{4}\) and Abarbanel \({ }^{5}\) were of those who voiced this view in later times. Many Christian and Mohammedan authors did likewise. Prominent among the last were the Ihwan as Safa. Ibn Roshd (Averroes, 1126-1198), a contempary of Nathanel, is explict on this subject in his " Destruction of the Destruction" (Tahafut al-tahafut). \({ }^{6}\) Thus the Yemenite Jew was taught to look with pride upon the extraordinary achievements and contributions of his nation. Translating himself by the magic of his imagination to the remote past, he beheld Socrates admitted into the treasure-house of Jewish lore by Achitophel and Asaph. Plato stepped forward either in the person of Jethro or as a converted disciple of Jeremiah in Egypt; and the Stagirite was revealed sitting at the feet of Simon the Just. A great yearning seized upon the Jews to acquire and to disseminate what they believed had been lost to them. Especially in the works of the translators and writers of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we hear by the side of lamentations over the loss of the old, jubilation over the reappearance, the renascence,, of their ancient intellectual possessions. They were raising up the fallen booth of their wisdom. This belief was an inspiration, intensity of which can be approximately appreciated by considering the contribu-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\); Talmud, Gittin 6ob.
2' Contra Apion, Bk I, ch. 22. \(\quad\). Kusari I, 63 ; II, 66.
- Dalalat I, ch., LXXII. \({ }^{\text {E }}\) Commentary, Gen. X. I.
- Munk, Le Guide des Egares, vol. I, p. 332, note 3.
}
tion of the mediaeval Jews to the literary treasures of western civilization. They fed their national pride upon the intellectual food that had been stored up in Syriac and Arabic granaries. \({ }^{2}\) The results of their activity were far reaching. Europe was stifling in the fond embrace of the Holy Church. Independent thought meant heresy and death ; and, besides, there was little upon which independent thought could exert itself. The Jews provided the material. Men studied, pondered and breathed in another atmosphere. It required but time, and philosophy won the right to stand side by side with Church doctrine: " In the realm of grace the Church is supreme; in the realm of nature, Aristotle." \({ }^{2}\) Then came the great Thomas Aquinas and effected what appeared to be a chemical combination of the two elements. But the union was unnatural. Men asserted their God-given right to think and to believe independently of the dogmatic accumulations of centuries. Thus was prepared a royal road over which the world journeyed into the Reformation, the Renaissance, and the modern distinction between Church and State with all that implies. Mankind has not as yet fully appreciated the role played by the Mediaeval Jew.

Though the geographical location of the Yemenite Jews robbed them of the privilege of exercising as great an influence as their more favored Western brethren, history must recognize them also as heroes in the struggle for the world's emancipation.
\({ }^{1}\) D. Kaufmann: Die Sinne, p. 3 ff.
\(\therefore\) Summa T'ıcologia I, Qu. I, 8.

\section*{INTRODUCTION}

In the name of Him "who imparts knowledge unto man". \({ }^{\text {. }}\) "The secret of the Lord is with those that fear him." \({ }^{2}\)

In the name of God, the merciful and compassionate, do I begin. By His words am I led aright, His ordinances will I follow-God thy Gracious Helper! Praised be God, yea the God of Israel, the First preceding every primeval thing; the Cause of the cause of causes; the Ancient who passeth not away; who is one, but not in the category of number, declared a Unity, Unequalled, Everlasting; who "beareth not nor was He born"; \({ }^{3}\) the Absolute Unity, the One in eternity; who emanateth souls, originateth forms, createth and produceth the bodies. Great are His benevolence, honor and might. He is free from limitations, acting at will. His are the celestial sphere, wisdom and power, decreeing and disposing, laudation and eulogy, beneficence and munificence, dominion and perpetuity, majesty and grandeur, creation and empire, uniqueness, and omnipotence. He is the Living One who dieth not; the Eternal by virtue of His eternity ; the Permanent because of His Permanence; the Divine Creator through His Supreme power, potent to do whatsoever He wishes. Nothing is like unto Him ; He created all things out of nothing. Unto him we cannot apply definition, attribute spatiality or quality. He has no throne that would imply place nor a footstool that would imply sitting. He cannot be described as rising up or sitting down, as moving or as motionless, as bearing or as being born, as having characteristics or as in anywise defined. Before Him all the idols were humiliated, and all creatures bowed in adoration. He does not enter or go out, descend or ascend. He is far beyond the reach of the human intellect, transcending apprehension, conception, and even conjecture. His essence is indescribable and cannot be grasped by means of the attributes.
\(\therefore\) Ps. XCIV, io. © Ps. XXV, 14. \({ }^{3}\) Sura CXII. 3.

He is exalted even beyond the sublimity and the greatness ascribed to Him by the philosophers, as the prophet, peace be with Him, praised Him and said in his outburst of praise: "Let them bless Thy glorious Name-Thy Name be exalted above all blessing and praise!" \({ }^{1}\) And now to proceed.

The first creation of God was the Universal Intellect-the origin of life, the fountain of blessings, the well-spring of happiness. It is the source of emanations-the spheres, the elements, exalted souls, complex bodies, and the varied forms in the earth and in the heavens. God made it by His word and His will, not from anything and not in anything, not with anything and not through anything. He simply willed that it should be, and it issued forth a perfect intelligence, understanding its essence, which was charged with all His creations and thus became the maker of everything made and the bearer of everything borne. It was in a state of rest because of its perfection and completeness, but began to bestir itself out of thanksgiving for the blessings it had received at the hands of its Creator. The Universal Intellect is referred to by the Holy Scriptures in the passage, "The Lord created me in the begining of His way, before His works of old-in the remote past, the beginning; ere there were any depths I was brought forth; when he established the heavens, I was there." \({ }^{2}\) Considering its essence the intellect ascertained that the qualities that distinguished it must be discarded from the essence of the Creator; it was nevertheless filled with unbounded joy in discovering in it the universal blessing, the divine perpetuity and the eternal life it contained and the exalted place it occpies in the scheme of its Creator-sanctified be His names! Therefore Holy Writ saith, "I was by him as a master workman, His daily delight at all times, rejoicing before Him." " Its exuberant joy and happiness caused an overflow, and thus there emanated from it the Universal Soul.
- Neh. IX, 5.
\(=\) Proverbs VIII, 22, 23, 24, 27.
* The exclamation, "Sanctified be His Names!" is Islamic. For the ninety-nine names of God see Hughes' Dictionary of Mohammedanism, article "God."
- Proverbs VIII, 30.

Some of the learned hold that the Intellect sent forth from itself into the world abstract intellegences, arranged in nine degrees corresponding to the nine numbers which complete the set of single numbers. These intelligences, together with the first creation, complete the decade from which the whole world -the upper and the lower-is derived. They find the confirmation of this theory in the doctrine, "With ten utterances the world was created;" \({ }^{1}\) and "upon ten words the world stands." As for the sages, they had an authentic tradition \({ }^{2}\) to the effect that "Seven things were created before the world was created; the Torah, \({ }^{3}\) Eden, Gehinnom, the throne of glory, repentance, the name of the royal Messiah and the place of the sanctuary," \({ }^{4}\) as they explained in the Talmud saying, the proof thereof can be found in Scripture: "Whence do we know that the Torah was created before the world? From the passage, "The Lord created me in the beginning of His way, before his works of old." \({ }^{5}\) Whence the garden of Eden? From the passage, 'And the Lord God planted a garden in Eden of old.' \({ }^{6}\) Whence Gehinnom? From the passage, 'For a Topheth is prepared of old.' \({ }^{7}\) Whence the throne of glory? From the passage, 'Before the mountains were brought forth Thou didst turn man to the dust and didst say, 'Repent \(O\) son of man. \({ }^{\text {s }}\) 8 Whence the name of the Messiah? From the passage, "Before the existence of the sun his name was Yinnon." Whence the place of the sanctuary? From the passage. 'A glorious high throne from the beginning is the place of our sanctity.' " \({ }^{10}\) Some of the learned add thereto the characters of the alphabet, \({ }^{11}\) declaring that these were originated before the world of changeable things, inasmuch as every rational being needs them in discourse and in uttering the praise of God. The proof thereof is derived from the passage, "In the
\({ }^{1}\) Pirke Aboth V, I .
D. The expression "authentic" indicates Islamic influence. The Mohammedan doctors of the law reduced the study of the authenticity of traditions to a science.
\({ }^{3}\). It is significant that the Jews never propounded the doctrine that the Torah is eternal. It is believed that the Mutazilites derived their doctrine of the creation of the Koran from the Jews. Cf. Schreiner's "Der Kalam in der Juedischen Literatur," p. 4. - Pesachim 54a.

\footnotetext{
- Gen. II, 8.
\({ }^{21}\) Pirke Aboth V, 9.
}
r Is. XXX, 33.
\({ }^{10}\) Jeremiah XVII, 12; Pesachim 54a.
beginning God created the heavens and the carth," \({ }^{1}\) that is to say, the whole alphabet from aleph to tav and the first light that existed before the luminaries concerning which we read, "Let there be light." \({ }^{*}\) Both opinions are plausible. The proofs of these things are the ten utterances, since they balance that degree numerically in this world; for these utterances were only in instants and each one of them comprised a thing created by God; but one of the utterances did not refer to time or place, namely the first, "Let there be light!" While the rest referred to time or place, for it is written, "And God said, 'Let the firmament be,' \({ }^{3}\) etc.; and God said, 'Let the waters be gathered, \({ }^{\prime 4}\) and God said, 'Let the earth bring forth herbs; ;'s and God said, 'Let there be luminaries,' \({ }^{6}\) etc.; and God said, 'Let the waters bring forth abundantly;' 7 and God said, 'Let the earth bring forth,'8 etc. ; and God said, 'Let us make man,', etc.; and God said, 'Behold I have given,' \({ }^{10}\) etc.; and God said, 'It is not good for man to be alone, \({ }^{11}\) and according to others the verse and God said unto them: Be fruitful and multiply. "12 These ten utterances correspond to the ten numbers which are formed in man who is a microcosm with ten members. We shall treat this subject at greater length when get to it with the help of God.

Thus, the first created correspond in degree to One, and the Universal Soul to two, and so forth. According to the Sages Divine Wisdom is used in the Torah as a metonymy for the Universal Intellect which is the first creation, and Garden and Eden for the Universal Soul, which is next to it. It is the mansion of the rewarded, the partial souls emanated from it into the world of nature. Similarly the other degrees, until thou reachest the world of the celestial spheres and the stars a world light of weight. \({ }^{13}\) In it were carved all the forms of that subtle world, whence they came to this coarse world by

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Gen. I, I. \({ }^{2}\) Gen. I, 3. \({ }^{3}\) Gen. I, 6. \({ }^{\text { }}\) Idem 9. \({ }^{5}\) idem II. \({ }^{6}\) idem 14. \({ }^{7}\) idem 20. \({ }^{8}\) idem \(24 . \quad{ }^{\circ}\) idem \(26 . \quad{ }^{10}\) idem 29. \({ }^{31}\) idem 18. \({ }^{12}\) idem 28.
\({ }^{13}\) We read in Naturanschautng und Naturphilosophic, p. 49; "The celestial bodies are neither heavy nor light since they maintain their relative positions."
}
the power of the Wise and Mighty One as an indication of His wisdom and the efficiency of His providence. \({ }^{1}\) The three worlds correspond to and balance one another with respect to their density, their lightnesand their rareness, so that they are all inter-related, manifesting the wisdom of their Creator and proving that it was He that made them by his perfect wisdom and that theyare notself-created. Tothis theScriptures refer in the passage, "How great are Thy works. O Lord, in wisdom hast thou made them all!" And again, "The Lord founded the earth in wisdom, established the heavens with understanding." \({ }^{3}\) Man was the final creation; he is a microcosom, and of the noblest degree. That subject will be treated in the chapter which follows that coming after, please God.

We have called this book, "The Garden of Wisdom," and have arranged its contents in seven chapters.

The first chapter treats of the Unity of God; that there is no God besides Him.

The second chapter shows that man is a microcosm, corresponding to the three worlds which preceded him in existence -the subtle, the light and the coarse.

The third chapter treats of the necessity of obeying God privately and publicly, and of adoring Him outwardly and inwardly.

The fourth chapter treats of repentace, attentiveness to the work of God,humility in His presence, and other subjects, like continence, submission, and the preeminence of the learned and godly in this world and in the next.

The fifth chapter treats of reliance upon God in all maters relating to both religious and worldly affairs; our consideration of all things created by Him in the upper and in the lower world; the evidence of His wisdom in all creatures small and great; the divine provision for the nourishment of all creatures; the loveliness of death; and the like.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) The study of the pure form-the iorm apart from matter, the eternal substance which unlike other substances suffers no change-was a part of theological science. Cf. Propaedeutik, p. 24; Naturanschaunng, p. 19. According to Anthropologie, p. 39, the angels are forms abstracted from matter.
\({ }^{2}\) Ps. \(24 . \quad{ }^{2}\) Proverbs III, 19.
}

The sixth chapter treats of the excellencies of the Messiah -may he come speedily!-and the salvation of Israel-God hasten it;-and disproves the abrogation of the law with a sufficient number of arguments philosophic, theological and traditional, in Hebrew and Arabic.

The seventh chapter mentions the Future World-the After Dwelling-that it is the end, that to it belongs Paradise, i. e., life and eternity, and shows that the Creator keeps all evil from His creatures.

\section*{THE GARDEN OF WISDOM.}

\section*{CHAPTER I.}

Concerning the declaration of God's unity, and that there is no God besides Him, amongst the first and amongst the last, in the heights or in the depths, according to the Scriptural words, "For who is God save the Lord, and who is a Rock besides our God?" \({ }^{1}\) Or as the philosopher expressed it, "Though thou art called by numerous names thou abidest in Thy changelessness! Though manifested midst created things thou art their ancient Lord."

Know, my brother-may God strengthen both of us with His spirit!-that this gate is the foundation of the sciences, of religious practices, sects, and religious beliefs; it is their key, their summit, their pole star. \({ }^{2}\) Through it true religious belief is distinguished from polytheism, religious practice is perfected and faith made firm. The service of God becomes complete, unmarred by trouble, unaffected by evil.

Know that the most eminent minds and the profoundest reasoning have shown that the worlds, the higher and the lower, \({ }^{3}\) in their minute parts and in their magnitude, were originally non-existent, and were called into existence by another Being. He originated and established them just as they are at present. He rules and controls them with absolute power, so that they do not infringe upon his authority or deviate from what he has commanded and decreed.

The world did not create itself since it is impossible for a

\footnotetext{
1 Ps. XVIII, 32. : Compare Weltseele, p. 98.
s According to Propaedcutik, p. 74, all bodies are embraced in either of two worlds: the world of the spheres or the world of the four elements, the latter being the world of genesis and decay. The first was called "the high world" and the second "the low world." "High" was applied to what lay near the all-surrounding sphere, "low," to what is near the centre of the earth.
}
thing to create itself, to originate its own essence. \({ }^{1}\) For if things created themselves they would be autonomous, perfectly free in their actions. They would do whatever they wished whenever they wished. If the sun, for instance, were the Creator and originator of itself and there were no other Being who is its Creator and Ruler, it would perhaps appear at one time in the east and at another time in the west. It would moisten what it usually dries, and would dry what it usually moistens. \({ }^{2}\) It would remain in whatever zodiacal signs it wished, would leave them at pleasure, would rise when it wished, and perhaps would determine never to set. The same may be said of the other stars above and the elements beneath, for the application of this illustration is universal. Since things, then, always were as we find them now-not having left the beaten path or shifted their characteristics or in anywise changed from what they were in the carliest time- we know, and know with certainty, that they are creations, originated, governed and controlled, and that besides them there is One who originated them, who prescribed what their conduct shall be, controls them by His irreversible decree, and impressed upon them different characteristics, e. g., heat in the sum and cold in the moon, and likewise the characteristics of the stars and of the elements, and the courses of the various planets, as we shall partially mention in one of the chapters of this book, please God.

Since it is clear that the world has a Creator and Maker other than itself, we set about to ascertain whether this Creator is one or many. We find that things, when viewed with reference to their multitude or their causes, have antecedents less and less in number until we come to a single cause, and this cause presupposes One to whom it owes its origin. \({ }^{3}\)

Thus, all things above and bencath, go back to the Cause of causes, and that is the first creation that the Creator-great should be His praise!-has produced by His will and design not in time nor in place, not through anything or in anything, according to the prefatory remarks in the beginning of this book.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Bachya, HIoboth hal Lebaboth, Ch. I, Sect. 5.
2. Refers to the action of the sun's heat upon snow and ice.
* Bachya, ch. I, Sect. 7 .
}

He was the Originator, the Cause of causes, the Creator, One and Single. He is too transcendent to be placed in the category of cause and effect, or qualified with such epithets as "producing" and "sending out emanations."

Since universal necessity establishes the existence of the Creator-praise to His Glory!-seeing that things could not possibly have created themselves-it is made clear to us by the most convincing proof that the world not only has a Creator, but that He is one in essence and not more than one, for reason cannot grasp unity as less than one and not as more, \({ }^{1}\) Among the proofs of the unity of the Divine essence is the argument of the opposition of desires in two beings: either one of them may wish what the other does not. \({ }^{2}\) If the wishes of both are in perfect accord then the essence is, beyond a doubt, single. But in case of disagreement, it would be utterly impossible for two or more to create this world according to their differing desires, since it is perfect in its creation and firm in its construction. \({ }^{3}\) It contains many things contrary and in opposition, but all of them are perfect through the divine wisdom and handiwork, through the sublime unity of its Creator and Author, its Governor and Maker. And its Creator-May His Names be sanctified!-is One in His essence, but not the unity which we grasp; wise in essence but not with the wisdom of mortal; living, existing, eternal, permanent, perpetual. His cternity did not emanate from another being; His life was not bestowed by another; His wisdom was not acquired from another; neither was he called into existence. He is the eternal the permanent, the living, the wise and the perpetual life, wisdom, and perpetuity, since the original source of everything is His essence and He is the Living One alone. He transcends the attributes applied to things originated and created, such as first and last, substance and accident, coarseness and fineness. He cannot be compared to them or they to Him, for how can
2. Bachya, ch. I, Sect. 7; Propaedeutik, pp. 5 and 6.
- Cf. Sura, 22. Had there been in the heavens or on earth gods besides Allah both (heavens and earth) would have surely gone to ruin.
- Bachya, ch. I, Sect. 7; Naturanschaunng, D. \({ }^{663}\). This is the first proof of the Mutakallimun:'Dalalat, vol. ii, ch. LXXV.
- Mutazilitic.
the creature be compared to the Creator, the thing originated to its Originator, God is exalted far above all. We shall make mention of this fact in every chapter of our book, as far as possible and suitable, wherever we refer briefly to the subject of His unity, as the occasion for speaking about it permit, please God. For that did He command us, because of it did He charge us, and for the knowledge of it He created us. The Scriptures have taught us this doctrine in a number of passages, as for instance, "And thou shalt know to-day and reflect in thy heart that the Eternal is God, and that there is none else;" " "Hear O Israel, the Eternal is our God; the Eternal is One;" \({ }^{2}\) "See now that I, even I, am He; I put to death and bring to life, in order that they may know from east to west that there is none besides Me ,-I am the Eternal;" \({ }^{\circ}\) and many such. The revealed prophetical books likewise testify that He is one in His essence, free from all attributes, nothing can compare to Him: "Unto whom will ye compare Me and I shall be similar to him? saith the Holy One;"* " Unto whom will ye liken God, and what image will ye compare unto Him?"s "Unto whom will ye liken Me and make Me equal, and compare Me and we shall be similar? \({ }^{\prime \prime}\) and many such.

The theologians have composed a number of books on that subject. Rabbi Saadiah ben Joseph and others went into the matter as profoundly as they could and "God does not burden the soul beyond what it can bear," \({ }^{7}\) He being glorious, exalted, excellent, and enduring beyond the reach of description and qualification. \({ }^{8}\) He imparts knowledge to the learned, righteousness to the righteous, power to the powerful, wisdom to the wise, being the Cause of the cause \({ }^{\circ}\) of existing things, the Creator of created things, the bountiful Giver of generous gifts, the Bestower of existence, the Source of blessings and favors, and the Preserver of the order of things. He gives permanence to all permanent things, directs the uni-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. IV, 39. \({ }^{2}\) Idem, VI, 4. \({ }^{3}\) Idem, XXXII, 39. * Isaiah, XL, 25. \({ }^{\text {. }}\) Idem XL, 18. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XLI, 5. \({ }^{\circ}\) Sura II, 286. \({ }^{\circ}\) AlAmanat val-Itikadat, p. III. - God is here referred to as the creator of the Universal Reason.
}
verse and knows what is concealed. He precedes all things originated and shall be after all terminations, manifest, secret and concealed. His knowledge extends over all things, and He is the Hearer, the Wise, the Kind, the Mighty, the Benign and the Merciful. Such is His power, such His will. Truly tongues are too dumb to describe Him, souls too feeble to praise Him. In this strain did a pious man commune: "O God, Thou art exalted beyond expression! Only anthropopsychically \({ }^{1}\) canst Thou be conceived by those who call upon Thee. Impossible is it to address Thee in any other way. Seek we to imagine Thee suffering change-we are void and bewildered. Hesitating to declare Thee either active or motionless the mind is at a standstill. Verily the path between negation and affirmation inspires fear." Praised be the Cause of existing things! They are divided into excellent intellects, subtle souls and bodies light and heavy. These are expressed by primitive nouns, denominatives, adjectives and nouns qualified by adjectives. God, however is too exalted to have His essence fall under any one of these divisions or that imagination should reach Him or that the understanding should comprehend Him. For how can the creature conceive its Creator or the invention its Inventor without being related to something that can carry it back to Him? Nor does He belong to a class through which comparison may be made with Him, since time does contain Him and epithet cannot characterize Him. The essence of his unity is such that it does not presuppose contingency, neither is it open to the least suspicion thereof, since the Majestic. One is beyond the description of those who describe Him, the mighty beyond the epithets of those who praise Him, surpassing what is declared concerning Him and worthy of thanks far beyond what is rendered unto Him. I give thanks unto Him, have confidence in Him and my affairs will I entrust to Him, according to the words of His saint, "Loving

\footnotetext{
1 The usual translation of the Arabic term employed is " anthropomorphic." The meaning of the term in the quotation is "anthropopsychic" which is the proper term to apply to the human concept of God. Cf. The Duke of Argyll's "The Philosophy of Belief," p. 249.
}
kindness shall encompass hin that trusteth in the Lord;" \({ }^{1}\) " That my trust may be in the Lord I have made known to thee this day, even to thee." \({ }^{2}\) The first chapter is finished. There follows

\section*{CHAPTER II.}

This chapter shows that man is a microcosm and the noblest existent under the sphere of the moon. \({ }^{3}\)

They say that "since man was the last thing created and with him God's work was complete, it follows as a necessity of the divine wisdum that he should be the noblest existent in the world of genesis and decay." " The Creator made him a microcosm corresponding to and resembling the three worlds which we have mentioned. He is superior to all other creatures and exercises authority over all that exists in the form of mineral, plant or animal. The Sacred Scriptures speak thereof in the passage, "Thou has made him but little less than divine and dost crown him with glory and honor. Thou causest him to rule over the works of Thy hand. Thou puttest all things under his feet: All sheep and oxen, the beasts of the field and the fowl of the air, the fish of the sea and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the sea."

We shall carefully consider man with respect to all those characteristics, circumstantial and essential, which in the eyes
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. XXXII, io. \({ }^{2}\) Prov. XXII, 19.
\({ }^{3}\) Logik und Psychologie, p. 19. The idea that man is a microcosm is very old. It was voiced in one form or another by Anaximenes, Plato, Aristotle, the Stoics and the Neo-platonists. Through the last it came to the Arabs and was presented systematically by the Ihwan as-Safa. Cf. Doctor's Philosophie des Joseph ibn Zaddik, p. 19, on the microcosm in Jewish literature cf. Frankel's Monatssc'irift, vol. III, p. 159 ff. and 197ff. also Guttmannis Philosophic Gebriol's, p. 117, note \(\widehat{3}\).
- The terms genesis and decay go back to Aristotle. When the form that is assumed by a thing is superior to the one cast off, the process is called genesis; if inferior, decay. The study of genesis and decay was the mediaeval substitute for chemistry. Cf. Naturarschauung und Naturphilosophie, p. 62.
- Ps. VIII, 6-9.
of the philosophers make him a microcosm. We must therefore take into consideration and reflect upon all his qualitiesthe corporeal and the spiritual, the external and the internalthat we may appreciate the greatness of his Creator and Author -may He be exalted!-that His grandeur may grow apace in our hearts and that we may render the service due Him. \({ }^{1}\) Referring thereto Holy Writ saith in the words of Job, "From my flesh shall I see God." \({ }^{\text { }}\)

Subjecting man to examination we find him one, corresponding to the one. We note further that he is composed of two substances, a subtle spirit and a coarse body: corresponding to the two. \({ }^{3}\) His body has length, breadth, and depth: corresponding to the three.' Similarly, the soul has three faculties. The first, the faculty of sensation and appetite, located in the liver, resembles the spirits of brutes. The second, the choleric faculty located in the heart resembles the spirits of jinns. \({ }^{\text {b }}\) The third faculty, intelligence, located in the brain, resembles the spirits of angels." Corresponding to the fours which are in the world, are the four humours: blood, phlegm, bile and spleen. \({ }^{7}\) The nature of blood is moist-warm, corresponding to the nature of the atmosphere. The nature of the phlegm is moist-cold, corresponding to the nature of water. The nature of the spleen is dry-cold, corresponding to the nature of the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Compare Anthropologic, p. 46. The Ihwan explain that God made the human being a microcosm that he might get some conception of the macrocosm which is too vast to be grasped directly. The Creator intended the world as a testimony to Himself. In the Propaedeutik, p. 21, we are told that according to tradition, whosoever knows himself knows God, and whosoever knows himself best knows God best.
\({ }^{2}\) Job. XIX, 26. \({ }^{3}\) Weltseele, pp. I and 16; Anthropologie, p. 41.
- Propaedeutik, p. 25.
\({ }^{5}\) The jinns are wicked, corrupt souls, which formerly had bodies and then discarded them. They are ignorant and unpurified. They are blind to the truth, deaf to what is right and dumb as regards noble language. They roam about in the darkness of the sea of matter. Propaedeutik, p. 72 .
- The angels are souls entrusted with the maintenance of the world. They were originally in bodies and in that state purified themselves and acquired intelligence. After escaping from their bodies they roam about happily among the spheres and in the expanse of the heavens. Anthropologie, p. 8. \({ }^{7}\) Idem, p. 4 ; Propacdeutik, p. 4.
}
earth. \({ }^{1}\) Corresponding to five are his five senses: hearing, seeing, smelling, tasting, and feeling. \({ }^{2}\) Corresponding to the six are his six surfaces: right and left, front and rear, above and below. \({ }^{3}\) Corresponding to the seven are the seven apertures in his head: the ears, the eyes, the nostrils and the mouth. Corresponding the eight are his eight powers: attraction, retention digestion, rejection, growth, change, procreation, and increase. Corresponding to the nine are the nine substances of his body: nail, skin, hair, flesh, blood, bone, marrow, veins and nerves. \({ }^{5}\) Corresponding to the ten are his ten organs: the heart the brain, the liver, the lungs, the gall, the bladder, the spleen, the kidneys, the stomach, the intestines, and the testicles.

A scholar wrote another explanation concerning man, making him correspond in the manner cited above in our treatise. According to him the soul and body correspond to the heavens and the earth, and to Moses and Aaron-peace be unto them! -for they were like the heavens and the earth. Just as the earth receives what comes from the heavens so the pious Aaron learnt what Moses communicated to him, according to the passage, "See I have made thee a god unto Pharaoh, and Aaron, thy brother shall be thy prophet. And thou shalt speak," etc. The correspondence is extended to the two tablets, for their origin was earthly and their inscription Heavenly \({ }^{\circ}\); to the Torah and the Mishna, and to this world and the world to come.

Now God has arranged all things in pairs' and placed in this world many contraries, the various creations occuring in two's. All that is proof that He is Absolute Unity, and not as the unity of things originated, which is only metaphorical while His is real. He-praised be He!-is too exalted and too perfect to be qualified by an epithet. All that we can predi-

1 Propacdeutik, p. 2. The old classification of the five senses was not native to the Jews but reached them through the science of the Arabs. Saadiah could trace only four senses indicated in the Bible, and the same can be said of lbn Ezra in his commentary on Psalm CXV, 7 . The IIebrew language even laeked the word "sense." Cf. Die Sinne, p. 35.
\({ }_{3}\) Anthropologic, p. 4. \({ }^{3}\) Idem, p. 13; Weltscele, p. 21. *Anthropologie, p. 4. \({ }^{\circ}\) Exodus vii, r and 2. "Exodus xxxii, 16.
- Cf. Sura Li, 49: "And of everything we have created pairs that haply ye may reflect."
cate of Him is that He is the Creator, the Single, and the One; human speech is utterly at a loss how to express the thought in more subtle terms.

Of those things which God placed in pairs and in opposition we instance life and death, riches and poverty, light and darkness, the first and the last, the exterior and the interior, day and night, heat and cold, arable lands and deserts, knowledge and ignorance, the sweet odor and the ill odor, heaviness and l:ghtness, roughness and smoothness, hardness and softness, highness and lowness, gain and loss, the bound and the released, trust and fear, peace and war, the difficult and the easy, grief and joy, substances and accidents, sickness and health, ugliness and beauty, sea and dry land, plain and mountain, unhappiness and happiness, separation and conjunction, poison and antidote, servant and master, and others whose number no one but Him can comprehend. \({ }^{1}\)

Likewise, He made man's aggregate qualities consist of many sets of contraries. We have counted one hundred and forty such qualities which we shall proceed to mention:
knowledge and ignorance, memory and forgetfulness, briskness and slowness, generosity and avarice, courage and cowardice, wakefulness and dormancy, motion and rest, ingress and egress, standing and sitting, speech and silence, mercifulness and mercilessness, gladness and sadness, mirthfulness and tearfulness, veracity and mendacity, piety and impiety, justice and injustice. humility and pride, loyalty and disloyalty,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Weltseele, p. 2; Logik und Psychologie, p. 2.
}
modesty and immodesty, envy and devotion, boastfulness and bashfulness. contentment and cupidity, strength and weakness, eloquence and incoherency, hunger and satiety, thirstiness and thirstlessness, absence and presence, divestment and investment, blameworthiness and praiseworthiness, obtuseness and acuteness, irascibility and forbearance, stupidity and sagacity, hastiness and tardiness, boldness and bashfulness, lust and chastity, extravagance and thriftiness, insubordination and submission, disobedience and obedience, sincerity and insincerity, carelessness and vigilance, sinfulness and sinlessness, enmity and amity, fidelity and infidelity, mildness and severity, doubtfulness and certainty, decency and indecency, timidity and tranquility, conjunction and disjunction, rectitude and obliquity
hope and despair, cautiousness and impetuosity, forgiveness and vengeance, prudence and foolhardiness, faithfulness and treachery, intelligence and hebetude, decorousness and shamelessness,
equity and iniquity,
licentiousness and asceticism, stinginess and liberality, softness and hardness, agreeableness and disagreeableness, terror and equanimity, dutifulness and undutifulness, pride and humility, sociableness and aloofness, solitariness and partnership, confirmation and denial, joyousness and distraction, leniency and severity.

Thus, man's qualities, good and bad, are altogether one hundred and forty. He should use them all in their proper place.

Likewise, corresponding to the three are life, rationality and mortality. Three are associated in a man's birth: the Creator and his parents. \({ }^{1}\) He corresponds to the three divisions of time: the past, the present and the future; and to period, place and moment; to the three patriarchs-Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Also to three worlds which man sees: one the womb of his mother; one this world; and one the world to come. And to the three books which are opened on high before the Holy One-blessed be He!-one for the righteous, one for the middie class, and one for the wicked. That of the righteous is written and sealed for Paradise; that of the wicked is written and sealed for Gehinnom; and the middle class is given a respite until the following Rosh Hashana : if they become meritorious, they are inscribed as meritorious; and if guilty, they are inscribed as guilty. \({ }^{2}\) To correspond to the priests, Levites and laymen. To correspond to the Torah, the Prophets and the Hagiographa. To correspond to the two extremities of the world and the axis thereof. \({ }^{3}\) To correspond to prophet, sage and king. To correspond to the Kedusha. \({ }^{4}\) To correspond

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Niddah, 31a. \({ }^{2}\) Rosh Hashana.
The heads of the world (Zenith and Nadir and the regent theory (?) cf. Masudi's Meadows of Gold, p. 8r, note.
-The Kedushah or sanctification refers to the proclamation of God as thrice holy. Is. vi, 3.
}
to the three kinds of science : theology, the science of bodies and chronology, the last named consisting of the past, the present and the future. \({ }^{1}\)

And similarly the four. Men are of four kinds: one is distinguished for knowledge but not for good works; another for good works but not for knowledge; a third for both knowledge and good works; a fourth for neither knowledge nor good works. \({ }^{2}\) Concerning that one of the Arabian poets says, "There are four kinds of men whose states and conditions are clearly evident. One man enjoys this world but not the after-world; another has no position in this world, but there looms up before him a future world to which God causes him to take his flight; a third acquires both, he is happy in this world and in the other; and another weeps over both, he enjoys neither this world nor the next. \({ }^{3}\) Then there are four seasons: summer, autumn, spring and winter. \({ }^{4}\) Also four revolutions: when the sun arrives respectively at the signs of Aries, Cancer, Libra and Capricorn, at regular intervals of time. \({ }^{5}\) Time has four divisions: day, week, month and year. The winds are four: the west wind, the east wind, the north wind and the south wind. \({ }^{6}\) Numbers are four: units, tens, hundreds, thousands. \({ }^{7}\) And likewise men are of four kinds : one masters the exoteric sciences but not the esoteric; one the esoteric but not exoteric; one both of them; and one neither of them. They correspond to the four varieties of vegetation which God enjoined the children of Israel to take in connection with the Feast of Tabernacles. The palm branch has taste but no odor; the myrtle has odor but no taste ; the citron, has both taste and odor; and the wil-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) According to the Ihwan the three kinds of science are propaedeut:cal, natural and theological: Weltseele, p. 2. Propaedeutical science includes the science of numbers and their computation, astronomy and music.
\({ }^{2}\) Vayikra Rabbah, parsha 30, sect. 12.

\({ }^{5}\) Propacdeutik, pp. 57 and 59; Pesachim 94b.
- Propacdeutik, p. 4.
\({ }^{7}\) Propacdeutik, p. 3; Logik und Psychologie, p. 39; Weltscele, p. 2. The Arabs have no word to express a number over a thousand. They therefore express a million as a thousand times a thousand, and so on with any larger number. In order to avoid mistakes they indicate at the end how often a thousand is to be taken or multiplied by itself. Cf. Masudi's Mcadozes of Gold, p. 173 with note.
}
low has neither odor nor taste. \({ }^{1}\) Men are likewise of four orders : the pious man who begets a pious child, of whom it is said, "In the place of thy fathers shall be thy children ;"" the pious man who begets a wicked child, of whom it is said, "Let thistles grow instead of wheat;"3 the wicked man who begets a righteous child, of whom it is said, "instead of the hedge shall grow up the fir tree;" \({ }^{4}\) and finally, the wicked man who begets a wicked child, of whom it is said, "From the wicked shall go forth wickedness." \({ }^{\prime \prime}\) Likewise there are four kinds of pardon : the four kinds of known atonement. The kinds of obedience are four; and the kinds of \(\sin\) four. The banned things are of four kinds and occur in innumerable cases: the impure thing that makes impure; that which makes impure that which was not impure; the impure which does not make impure; and that which neither makes impure nor is impure. The classification by four holds good also in the case of "yibbom" and "halizah," Thanksgiving offering oil, frankincense, oblation, and the first born for an inheritance and for the priest. And likewise four, there are four fires: the fire which eats and drinks,-the natural heat in animals; the fire which neither eats nor drinks,-the fire common among mankind; the fire which drinks but does not eat,-the heat in the bosom of the earth; and the fire which consumes but does not drink,-the fire of the surrounding ether. \({ }^{\text {. }}\)

Likewise, God gave man four characteristics reflecting the nature of the mineral, the vegetable, the animal and the angel. Genesis and decay are characteristics which he shares with minerals. Nutrition and growth are characteristics which he shares with vegetable life. Sensation and motion are characteristics which he shares with animal life. His angelic characteristics are adoration and eternal life, for when he truly serves God he does not die. \({ }^{7}\) Likewise the divisions of philosophy are four : first, the disciplinary and propaedeutical ; second, natural science and anatomy; third, logic; fourth, theology. \({ }^{8}\) Likewise God, when creating the world called into existence four simple things, which are the basis of all composi-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Vayikra Rabbah, parasha 30, sect. 12. \({ }^{2}\) Psalm XLV, 17.
\({ }^{8}\) Job XXXI, 40. \({ }^{6}\) Is. LV, 13. \({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{I}\),Samuel XXIV, 14 ; Yoma 86a.
\({ }^{6}\) Weltseele, p. 128. \({ }^{\top}\) Naturanschauung, p. 193. \({ }^{\text {B }}\) Propaedeutik, p. 2.
}
tions. These four simples are fire, air, water and earth. Their compounds are the minerals, the plants, the animals and man. \({ }^{1}\) Likewise, bodily diseases arise from imperfect mixture owing to the perverseness of one of the four humours in man, viz.: the blood, the phlegm, and the two biles. \({ }^{2}\) Their commixture gives rise to heat, moisture, cold and dryness. The learned have written medical works dealing with the use of aromatic roots. Their explanations are extensive and involve a science that is well nigh limitless. Corresponding to these humours are the four sources of the soul's defects. They are the origin of very severe, tenacious diseases which yield to treatment far less readily than bodily ailments, unless one resorts to the medicinal aromatic roots described by the prophets-God bless them. \({ }^{3}\) In their works they explain what God revealed to them concerning these roots. The causes of the soul's diseases are accumulated ignorance, evil disposition, corrupt views and shameful doings. \({ }^{4}\) When souls thus succumb, their excellence vanishes, their splendor is obscured, their vision is darkened and their burdens scarcely tolerable-from such a fate may God in His mercy save us! Were we to proceed to enumerate the things classified by the sages as occurring in fours, we would have to mention very many. Of their allusions we quote the following: "There are those who inherit and bequeath, bequeath buit do not inherit, inherit but do not bequeath, do not bequeath and do not inherit;"s Four qualities mark those who give charity;" Four qualities mark those who go to the Beth Hamidrash;" "Four should give thanks;"8 and many others which we shall not mention seeing that they are not hard to understand. Then there are the four agencies in the redemption of Israel from Egypt; the four "malchioth," which correspond to them; the four great beasts which the pious Daniel saw issuing out of the sea and which God caused our ancestor Abraham to see over against the dreadful intense darkness which fell upon him. \({ }^{\circ}\) The sages have put in the same category

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, p. 50; Naturanschaunng, p. 141.
- Anthropologie, p. 49; Logik, p. 106.
\({ }^{\text {: For the philosophers as physicians for the soul refer to Dugat's }}\) Histoire des Philosophes Musulmans, p. 236 . Probably refers to algazali's Munkid. 'Anthropologie, P. IO3. Baba Bathra, Ch. VIII, I. \({ }^{8}\) Pirke Aboth, V, 16. \({ }^{\text {² }}\) Pirke Aboth, V', 17. \({ }^{\circ}\) B'rachoth, 54a. 'Dan., VII, 3.
}
"inflammation, bright spot, scab and a swelling;" \({ }^{1}\) the four streams \({ }^{\text {G }}\) Gihon, Pishon, Hidekel and Euphrates;" \({ }^{2}\) and "ants, conies, locusts and spiders." \({ }^{\prime}\) Likewise, the wicked suffer a four-fold punishment, for it is written "The Lord raineth upon the wicked snares, fire, brimstone and a horrible tempest." \({ }^{*}\) In the world to come He will visit them with a four-fold punishment: an overflowing rain, hailstones, fire and brimstone. \({ }^{5}\) There are moreover, the four terrible penalties: the sword, pestilence, famine and wild beasts. \({ }^{6}\) The chariots are four, \({ }^{\text { }}\) and the smiths are four. \({ }^{8}\) The stars are of four kinds: the sun shines by day; the north stars by night but not by day; the moon may be seen both by day and by night ; the stars round about the South pole shine neither by night nor by day The zodiacal signs are also of four kinds: three are of the nature of fire, three of air, three of water, and three of earth. \({ }^{9}\) Water is of four kinds: water that ascends from the earth to the atmosphere is the origin of rain; water that descends from the atmosphere to the earth is the falling rain; water in the heights is ice; and the water which remains forever in the depths is the water of the sea, stored up according to the words, "He gathers together the waters of the sea in a heap." \({ }^{10}\) Vegetation is of four kinds: the nutritive and the medicinal, e. g., wheat, barley, and the like; the nutritive and non-medicinal, e. g., sugar, oils, and the like; medicinal and non-nutritive, aromatic roots among the dry grasses; and non-medicinal and non-nutritive, as thorns and the like.

Similarly, the five planets correspond to the five fifths of the Law ; \({ }^{11}\) the five possessions which the Holy One-Blessed be He !-especially appropriated to Himself in His universe; ; \({ }^{12}\) and the five services which occur on the Fast Day of Atonement. \({ }^{13}\) Similarly the five senses which are in man; and the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Leviticus XIII, 2. \({ }^{2}\) Genesis II, II, 13 and 14.
\({ }^{8}\) Prov. XXX, 24-28. \({ }^{4}\) Ps. XI, 16.
\({ }^{5}\) Ezekiel XXXVIII, 22. \({ }^{6}\) Tdem XIV, 21.
\({ }^{9}\) Zechariah VI, I-8. \({ }^{8}\) Idem II, 3.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Propaedeutik, p. 49. \({ }^{10}\) Ps. XXX, 7.
\({ }^{11}\) The Five Books of Moses. \({ }^{12}\) Pirke Aboth, VI, 10.
\({ }^{15}\) Kol Nidrei, Shaharith, Mussaph, Minha and Neila.
}
five celestial provinces. \({ }^{1}\) And in five, the figure five, as also twenty-five, always preserves itself throughout its self multiplication, and irregardless of the size of the product, does not increase. \({ }^{2}\)

Similarly, the six corresponds to the following : the six sides of the world; \({ }^{3}\) the six colors which God created in the world, viz. : white, black, red, green, yellow and blue; \({ }^{4}\) the six orders of the Mishna; and the six orders of the Tosephta; the six zodiacal signs which appear eternally above the earth and the six concealed eternally under the earth; and the six south stars and the six north; \({ }^{5}\) in regions of the north six months are perfectly dark without any admixture of light and in the south six months are light without any admixture of darkness; \({ }^{\text {; }}\) "six days of creation;"] "six wings to each one;" \({ }^{8}\) and likewise six openings in our bodies on the right side and six on the left. \({ }^{9}\)

And similarly the seven. Its applications are most frequent and most important, due largely to the grandeur, dignity and sanctity of the Sabbath in the eyes of God; for it is the seventh of the days, the last of them and their terminus, for their number closes with it. Whosoever observes the Sabbath as God decreed, learns to thoroughly appreciate it and its majesty as the law of God commands, and moreover fears God,

\footnotetext{
2" The astrologers divide up the degrees of each sign of the zodiac among the five planets. The portion assigned to each planet is called the province of that planet since it denotes the part of the sign where that planet exercises its full influence." De Slane, Proleg II, 22I, note 1; III 154, note 4. Does alhudud al’aluviat mean God, Universal Reason, Universal Soul, Nature and Things? Dieterici's Theologie, p. IX. There are five fundamental principles of Islam, five imams and the most eminent of the prophets were five. For the last named Cf. Weltseele, p. 172. The five chief figures mentioned by Euclid are the tetragon, cube, octahedron, icasahedron and dodecahedron. Propaedeutik, p. 3.
\({ }^{2}\) The Ihwan point out that if we regard one as the point, two as the line, three as the surface and four as the cube, then five is the sphere. If it be multiplied by itself ever so often the multiplicand persists: thus \(5 \times{ }_{5}=25 ; 25 \times 25=625 ; 625 \times 625=390,625\), etc. Cf. Propaedeutik, p. 8.
\({ }^{2}\) North, east, south, west, up and down. Anthropologie, p. 4.
- Anthropologie, p. 26.
- Propaedeutik, p. 47, has it that six of the constellations are north.
'Idem, p. 91. \({ }^{7}\) Gen. I. 'Isaiah VI, 2. 'Naturanschaunng, p. 154.
}
is completely religious. But when one's religion falls short of that it utterly fails him. The seven finds its application to man in the following particulars: the soul has seven spiritual powers and the body seven corporeal powers. The corporeal are attraction, retention, digestion, rejection, growth, increase and imagination. \({ }^{1}\) The soul's seven spiritual powers are: hearing, seeing, smelling, tasting, touching, speaking and intelligence. \({ }^{2}\) They correspond to the seven planets. Five of the planets have ten mansions out of the twelve signs of the zodiac. The two luminaries have two mansions, the moon ruling over one of them : the sign Leo being for the sun and Cancer for the moon. Now, the ten mansions belonging to the five planets are as follows: to the planet Saturn belong the signs Capricorn and Aquarius; to the planet Jupiter the signs Sagittarius and Pisces; to the planet Mars the signs Aries and Scorpion; to Venus the signs Taurus and Libra; and to Mercury the signs Gemini and Virgo. \({ }^{3}\) And likewise in the body of man there are twelve apertures: his ears, eyes, nostrils, mouth, navel, breasts and his two passages. \({ }^{4}\) Of these twelve openings ten are for five powers and two for two powers, corresponding to the planets and the two luminaries. The mouth corresponds to the sun, the navel to the moon, the ears to the mansions of Mercury, the eyes to the mansions of Jupiter, the nostrils to the mansions of Mars, and the two passages to the mansions of Saturn. \({ }^{5}\) Similarly his eyes are of seven strata, between each and every pair of strata there are gradations and powers of seeing which are not between the others. \({ }^{6}\) Similarly, God placed the channel of the faculty of hearing in the ears and the channel of the faculty of seeing in the eyes, the channel of the faculty of smell in the nostrils, the channel of the faculty of touch in the hands, the sensual taste in the mouth and in the private parts, the channel of the faculty of speech in the tongue which corresponds to the moon, and the channel of the faculty of intellect in the brain which corresponds to the sun. \({ }^{7}\) The brain supplies the speech which thou employest and the ideas

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, p. 48. Vayikra Rabbah, parsha 29, sect. 11.
\({ }^{2}\) Anthropologie, p. 48. \({ }^{3}\) Propaedeutik, p. 50; Anthropologie, p. 48.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem, p. 49. \({ }^{5}\) Idem, p. \(49 .{ }^{6}\) Compare Die Sinne, p. 85.
\({ }^{7}\) Anthropologie, p. 48.
}
which are expressed through speech with its eight and twenty consonants, just as the sun supplies the light \({ }^{1}\) wherewith the moon shines through eight and twenty mansions from its first appearance until it is complete and perfect through the power of their Author and Creator, sanctified be His Names; \({ }^{2}\) Likewise, on earth there are seven climates \({ }^{3}\) and eight and twenty regions. Furthermore, the importance of seven in the estimation of God is indicated by the fact that He ordained that the seven-month child should live, but the eight-month child should die since a month is superfluous. \({ }^{4}\) That is a mystery understood by God, the prophets whom He taught, and those versed in the sciences inherited from them, having mastered these sciencs through divine grace. Likewise, He made the heavens in seven parts \({ }^{5}\) and the climates seven in number. \({ }^{6}\) As another example of the excellence of seven in the estimation of God we note the characteristics of the calendar which the children of Israel use for their years, for the festivals and fasts ordained for them in the Torah, and also for the stipulation handed down to them in the authentic traditions of the prophets that Pesach must not begin on Monday, Wednesday or Friday; Azereth not on Tuesday, Thursday or Saturday; Rosh Hashana not on Sunday, Wednesday or Friday; the Day of Atonement not on Sunday, Tuesday or Friday ; and Purim not on Saturday, Monday or Wednesday. All of this is according to the postponements indicated by the ancient sages and their intimate associates of blessed memory. We have found that the origin, the canons and the methods of the calendar are based on the number seven. There are twelve simple ordinary years and seven leap-years. This is the theory of the calendar, its foundation and its entire key for all times. To show this we shall make in the latter part of this book an astronomical table, wonderful and ingenious. Whosoever wishes may scrutinize it, please God. \({ }^{7}\) Therein are great reward for all and complete religious practice-God controls success in His mercy! Likewise, Gol appointed seven shepherds to preside over His people

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, p. 49 : Propacdeutik, p. 131. \({ }^{2}\) Idem, p. 62.
\({ }^{1}\) Idem, 92-99; 191-199. Anthropologie, p. 72.
\({ }^{8}\) Propaedeutik, p. 46. 'Idem, 92-99; 191-199.
\({ }^{7}\) This table does not appear in our manuscript.
}

Israel; \({ }^{1}\) and Enoch was the seventh after Adam. \({ }^{2}\) The illustrious master Moses ben Amram-peace be uopn him!was the seventh after Abraham,-the order being Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Levi, Kehath, Amram, with Moses as the seventh. Likewise, Otsem was the sixth, and David the seventh son. \({ }^{3}\) We further find in the Talmudic narratives that every tribe in Israel gave birth to seven-month children. Similarly the wildernesses are seven: the wilderness of Sinai, Zin, Kadmuth, Kadesh, Shur, Paran and Ethan. The wilderness of Sinai is the most famous since it was the scene of the revelation of the Torah. Likewise, the seas are seven: Sodom, Tibrias, Sabki, Aspamia, Halta, Kinnareth and the Great Sea. Likewise there occur seven expressions for heaven in the Bible: r'kia, ilon, z'bul, m'hon, m'on sh'hakim and araboth. \({ }^{4}\) Likewise, the Biblical words for land are seven: arka, erez, heled, n'shya, ziyah, adamah and tebel. \({ }^{5}\) Israel was enjoined to observe the seven days of Niddah, the seven days of purification, the seven days of hymeneal rejoicing, and the seven blessings. God commanded Noah, " of the clean animals take by the sevens." \({ }^{\prime \prime}\) Then there are seven days of consecration, \({ }^{7}\) the seven pillars of the world, the seven worlds, and seven ancestors rest with God and corruption has no power over them. \({ }^{8}\) Likewise, God caused the release of the pious Joseph through the dreams in which Pharoah saw seven beautiful cows and seven full ears of corn and their contraries, and his deliverance was through the interpretation thereof, as thou knowest. \({ }^{9}\) Balaam prepared seven altars. \({ }^{10}\) Upon the menorah were seven sockets. \({ }^{11}\) Pardon and forgiveness are granted in Tishri which is the seventh month from Nisan, and Nisan witnessed

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Micah V, 5. In this group David was the central figure with Adam, Seth and Methusaleh on his right hand, and Abraham, Jacob and Moses on his left. Succah 52b.
\({ }^{2}\) Vayikra Rabbah, parsha 29, sect. II. \({ }^{3}\) Idem.
'Hagigah 12b; Aboth d'Rabbi Nathan, ch. 37; Midrash Thillim, Ps. CXIV.
\({ }^{5}\) Aboth d'Rabbi Nathan, ch. 37 ; Shir Hashirim Rabbah, parsha 6.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Gen. V'II, 2.
\({ }^{7}\) Levit. VIII, 23.
\({ }^{8}\) Baba Bathra 17a. The passage refers to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Moses, Aaron, Miriam and Joseph.
\({ }^{8}\) Gen. XLI. \({ }^{10}\) Numbers XXIII. \({ }^{11}\) Exodus XXV, 37.
}
the redemption since it is the seventh month from Tishri. In most of the sacrifices there were seven lambs of the first year. \({ }^{1}\) And likewise there are seven characteristics of a boorish man and seven of a wise man, \({ }^{2}\) and seven kinds of punishment come into the world for seven kinds of important transgressions. \({ }^{3}\) Likewise, God ordained that the Children of Israel should count seven weeks and at the expiration thereof make a pilgrmage to the Temple: that is the Pilgrimage of Weeks. \({ }^{4}\) He permitted them to keep their Hebrew slaves and handmaids in service for six years, but these were to be set free in the seventh. \({ }^{5}\) He ordained that they should count years seven times seven, i. e., forty-nine years; then landed property should be free and return to its original possessors in the fiftietio year. He enjoined them to plough and sow their fields six years, but during the seventh year the ground is to lie fallow. \({ }^{\text {b }}\) He enjoined upon them the recital of seven blessings in the Sabbath service, concerning which His favorite says, "Seven times a day do I bless thee." \({ }^{7}\) In the bethrothal there are seven blessings and seven days of huppa; and on the fast day seven blessings. Of all the numbers seven is most frequently referred to in the Scriptures. We quote a few of the many instances: "Seven abominations are in his heart ;" "Seven evils shall not touch thee;"0 "Though the righteous fall seven times he shall arise;" \({ }^{10}\) "Seven shall lodge without being visited by evil;" "For seven fold shall Cain be avenged." \({ }^{11}\) The illustrious master selected seventy elders to govern the people. \({ }^{12}\) There are thus many passages mentioning seven and its excellence. In treating the theory of religion as extensively as possible we shall recall in what respect that number is complete and wherein consists its pre-eminence, please God. When we reach the chapter dealing with the consideration of all that God has created, and especially the section treating of the seven stars and the twelve constellations, we shall enter into the easily intelligible aspects of the subject as far as our limited

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Levit. XXIII, 18. \({ }^{2}\) Pirke Aboth V, io. \({ }^{8}\) Idem V, II.
\({ }^{4}\) Deut. XIV, 9. \({ }^{5}\) Exod. XXI, 2 and 6. \({ }^{\circ}\) Levit. XXV, 2-7.
\({ }^{7}\) Ps. CXIX, 164. \({ }^{8}\) Prov. XXVI, 25. \({ }^{\circ}\) Job. V, 19.
\({ }^{10}\) Prov. XXIV, 16. \({ }^{11}\) Gen. IV, \(15 .{ }^{12}\) Numbers XI, 16.
}
knowledge permits, please God. Above every knowing being is the Omniscient, Mighty, Exalted One! Of Him we ask the blessing of grace and guidance in all matters religious and worldly.

We mention a portion of the subject here that thou mayest recognize that the seven stars and the twelve constellations are fundamental to the forces and that every prophet and lawgiver referred to them. As for the foundation of this world thou seest that there are seven stars in as many spheres and twelve signs of the zodiac in one sphere. Together they make up the nineteen foundations of time and place, according to seven days,-not more, not less. There are many classes of people in respect to language, sects and doctrines but not in respect to these days, for they cannot increase or diminish. Likewise, the twelve months persist through all times without cessation. Their increase or diminution would involve the destruction of universal harmony and the entire reversal of things, for there would be no stability since seven is the most faultless of the numbers. \({ }^{1}\) The same applies to the twelve. Thus there are the prescribed prayers wherewith we approach the King of Kings, make our necessities known to Him, ask of Him that which we desire, confess our sins and petition Him for our well-being and guidance. That is put into the eighteen benedictions, which together with the first, the principal one, make up the nineteen, to correspond to the seven and the twelve.

Much about seven and twelve that we regard as fundamental is concealed from the mass of the common people, but is clear to the noble and the wise. Instance the three portions of the Law, which it is incumbent upon us to read every day twice before the nineteen blessings are read: "Sh'ma," "V'haya im sh'amo'a" and "Vayomer." \({ }^{2}\) In the whole thereof are nineteen sections, after taking away one of them, which is repeated, viz.: the passage commencing, "U'chethabtem." It resembles the passages with which the Torah begins and ends, as we shall point out in the fifth chapter of this book. Therein we have

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Propaedeutik, pp. 7, 8 and 69. \({ }^{2}\) Deut. VI, 4-9; Deut. XI, 13-21; Numbers XV, 37-4I.
}
mentioned that instance and additional ones relating to the seven and the twelve. But one which we have not mentioned is the passage at the end of the Torah. It is the last composed by the pious and illustrious Moses-peace be upon him!-" O the happiness of Israel, \({ }^{1}\) etc. Concerning it the sages have the tradition that the letters "beth" and "caph" were used that the Torah might begin with the letter "beth" and end with the letter "caph," the world "b'reshith " being the first and "thidroch" the last. These sentences contain nineteen words. All of these things are open only to those versed both in the literal and in the manifestly figurative meaning of the words, for in them these secrets and hints point to the seven and the twelve. My brother, grasp these subtle mysteries and ponder over them with their numerous meanings and the knowledge that lies back of them, that thou mayest master them and through them attain eternal beatitude after emerging from the dwelling of ignorance-may God in His mercy grant both of us success!

We can cite many Scriptural sections whose length is regulated according to the seven and the twelve. Thus the first song, from "vayosha" to "hashem yimloch," numbers nineteen verses. \({ }^{2}\) The same applies to the verses with which the noble Jacob blessed his children from Reuben to Joseph; \({ }^{3}\) the total number of verses is nineteen. He left off with Joseph and Benjamin. In recognition of their rank he honored them on that occasion with another set of verses. And likewise the verses in the blessing of the illustrious prince Moses number nineteen. \({ }^{4}\) These verses extend down to the sentence beginning, "Who is like the God of Jeshurun?" This numerical arrangement holds good throughout the prophetical works with most of the allusory passages. If thou considerest the twelve minor prophets individually there will remain three in the later prophets and four in the earlier, making nineteen. By taking the four earlier prophets and the four later prophets and adding thereto the eleven books of the Hagiographa we have nineteen. Had we wished to deal exhaustively with the Prophetical and Hagiographical passages constructed on the principle of

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. XXXIII, 29. \({ }^{2}\) Exodus XV. \({ }^{8}\) Gen. XLIX. \({ }^{4}\) Deut. XXXIII.
}
nineteen we could have done so. This brief treatment of the subject is intended simply to be a suggestion to the wise. Thus we have made clear to thee, my brother, that time is built upon seven, and place likewise upon seven and twelve.

There are seven and twelve parts whose combinations I shall explain to thee. Now, the chief of the Arabs \({ }^{1}\) came to them only on account of these parts. He bound them to mention four words whose separate parts come under the seven and twelve in Arabic orthography. Only those versed in this subject grasp it, but as for the ignorant they are aware neither of it nor its meaning. The Arabs were told, "There is no God but Allah." \({ }_{2}\) To this declaration they added Mohammed's name, as if he were a messenger of God, and believed that by uttering these words they could attain bliss, that by virtue of these words they would surely be admitted into Paradise. Had he intended the formula to have that meaning, not a single person of intelligence would have heeded him. It means, however, that after a man believes in God, he should do what is proper, -that which God had commanded before this prophet came to his people. For if it meant that one might go about stealing, killing, adulterizing,-in a word, committing deeds displeasing to God-and by uttering these words would be admitted into Paradise, no man of intelligence would accept such a doctrine or consider it sane. As a matter of fact the formula possesses an inner meaning involved in its orthography. Their Book indicates therewith the science of the seven and the twelve which are the fount and the fundament of all created entities. When a man clearly realizes the intent of the formula and acknowledges God's unity and transcendence he becomes worthy of admission to Paradise, worthy to attain eternal happiness. In noting the distinguishing feature of these words, we find that the number of the letters "La il(a)h ila All(a)h" is twelve, and the number of the syllables seven; all in all nineteen. This result is due to the fact that " la" counts as one syllable and "ilah" as two, the sum total being seven.

Assuredly ours is the credit for these principles since our testimony preceded theirs. Instance the exclamation of David,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Mohammed. \({ }^{2}\) Sura XXXVII, 34 et passim.
}
"For who is God besides the Lord, and who is a Rock besides our God!" Similarly we magnified His Name in many other passages; "Great is the Lord and exceedingly praiseworthy;"" "Great is our Lord", \({ }^{3}\) etc., etc. We care to mention of the seven and twelve only that which we and the Arabs have in common. Aside from this consideration we surely would not mention the subject merely because it is mentioned by them. Furthermore, it is pre-eminent and fundamental according to one of their passages in another Surah which states that over hell there are nineteen. \({ }^{4}\) One commentator explains that as an allusion to their religion, and holds that the seven corresponds to the twelve syllables, and the twelve to the twelve letters of the formula of faith. \({ }^{5}\) Some claim that the seven 1:as reference to the Sabbath day which is the seventh. Thus, much is mentioned by the learned with regard to the preeminence of the seven and the twelve. They speak of it as the number of the vertebrae in the back. \({ }^{6}\) We also have gone quite deeply into the subject of the seven and the twelve. We shall treat the rest of this subject as extensively as we can in

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. XVIII, 32. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXLV, 3. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. CXLVII, 4. "Sura LXXIV, 30.
\({ }^{5}\) The sura reads: "And what shall make thee understand what hell is? It leaveth not anything unconsumed, neither doth it suffer anything to escape. It scorcheth men's flesh: over the same are nineteen angels appointed. We have none but angels to preside over the hell-fire; and we have expressed the number of them only for an occasion of discord to the unbelievers." The Ihwan explain that these verses refer to the passage of the seven planets through the twelve constellations: Anthropologie, p. I43. Nathanel appears to regard the nineteen as an allusion to the Mohammedan formula of faith with its seven syllables and twelve letters. Beidhawi, vol. II, p. 369 , says: " The nineteen refers to ninteen angels or nineteen kinds of angels. The special reason for this particular number is because the disorders of human souls, in thought and deed, are caused by the twelve animal forces and the seven natural forces. Or it may mean that Gehinnom has seven degrees. Six of these are for the kinds of infidels. Each kind is punished for neglecting belief in the faith, the confession of faith and the practice of the religion with a certain kind of punishment which fits it. and over each kind an angel or kind of angel presides. One degree is for believers who sinned. They are pumished in hell with a specific kind of punishment for neglecting the practice of the religion. Over this punishment an angel or kind of angel presides. Or because the hours are twenty-four: five of them employed in prayer. If during the other nineteen hours he has committed a sin whose penalty is one of these kinds of punishment the zahaniyat or hell-angels take charge of it."
\({ }^{\circ}\) The Ihwan (Naturanschauung. p. 211; Weltseele. p. 173) claim that the spine has 28 vetebrae. According to the Talmud (Oholoth, Ch. I, mishna 8) the spine has eighteen vertebrae.
}
its proper place in the fifth chapter,-please God, for from Him is help!

And as for the eight, behold to it there correspond the eight days of circumcision, \({ }^{1}\) the eight days of the Festival, \({ }^{2}\) and the eighth day which is distinguished by being set aside by itself, a festival for itself, a time for itself. \({ }^{3}\) Likewise the eight princes and the seven shepherds with whom they are allied, number fifteen. \({ }^{4}\) Fifteen is half the Ineffable Name, and witi it God created the world: "For with 'fifteen' the Eternal formed the world", \({ }^{5}\) and according to the passage, "When God created them." Do not read b'hibbor'am but b'he b'ra'am, for it is written, "By the word of the Lord the heavens were made." \({ }^{7}\) Eight also possesses pre-eminence as a principal number for in the Temple they used to sound eight tones upon the Sheminith. Eight fathers of the pure correspond to the eight faculties. The prophetical books are likewise eight. But the most interesting of all, is this: when thou takest into consideration the survivors after the flood thou findest them eight in number, viz. : Noah and his wife, his three sons and their three wives. \({ }^{8}\)

As for the nine, we find that the body of man is built up of nine substances; hair, nail, skin, flesh, fat, blood, marrow, bone and nerves. \({ }^{\circ}\) Likewise the spheres are nine: the seven that are well known, the sphere of the zodiacal signs and the sphere of darkness. \({ }^{10}\) Similarly the months of pregnancy are nine. \({ }^{11}\) The learned point out some wonderful characteristics of the nine primary numbers. \({ }^{12}\) They are the ancient Hindoo characters from which is derived the whole science of arithmetic

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Gen. XVII, 12.
\({ }^{2}\) Succoth or the Feast of Tabernacles (including Sh'mini Azereth).
\({ }^{3}\) Sh'mini Azereth or Eighth Day of Solemn Assemblage.
- Micah V. The eight princes are Jesse, Saul, Samuel, Amos, Zephaniah, Zedekiah, the messiah and Elijah. Succah 52b.
\({ }^{5}\) Is. XXVI, 4. J (a) h numerically fifteen.
\({ }^{6}\) Gen. II, 4. \({ }^{7}\) Ps. XXXIII, 6. Berceshith Rabbah, parsha 12, sect. Io.
\({ }^{5}\) Gen. VIII, 16. \({ }^{\circ}\) Anthropologie, p. 4.
\({ }^{10}\) Propaedeutik, p. 47. \({ }^{11}\) Anthropologie, p. 72.
\({ }^{12}\) The Arabs express the zero by a dot and do not consider it a number. In Spranger's Masudi's "Meadows of Gold," p. I57, we are told that the wise men of the Barahman or Indian ruler invented the nine figures which form the numerical system of the Hindoos.
}
dealing with the minute and the great, the many and the few, for which purpose the nine characters are inexhaustible. They are the following: \(1-2-3-4-5-6-7-8-9\). These are their forms. If thou writest the following figures 5-4-3-2 -I thou hast fifty-four thousand, three hundred and twenty-one. The tens are after the units, the hundreds after the tens, the thousands after the hundreds, the ten thousands after the thousands, and so on ad infinitum. As often as a figure is added to a number the number is increased a degree and assumes another aspect. And that is due to the fact that when thou addest them together there results the number forty-five, the figures by the threes amounting to fifteen or one-half the Ineffable Name which is numerically fifteen. That is clear:
\[
4+8+3 ; 9+5+1 ; 2+7+6
\]
every one of these three combinations amounts to fifteen. The Creator has been called "Fifteen" for Scripture saith, "Verily my strength and song is Jah" (Fifteen); and furthermore, "For with Jah (Fifteen) the Eternal formed the world." \({ }^{2}\) The Talmudists say, "With the 'he' (fifteen) He formed this world and the world of the future, for it is written, 'These are the generations of the heavens and the earth.' Do not read b'hiboro'om but b'he b'ra'am. \({ }^{3}\) One of the learned says, "From that it is seen that with nine letters death is meted out and the people of each generation pass away."

Of the ten \({ }^{4}\) are the ten commandments, \({ }^{5}\) and the ten utterances, \({ }^{6}\) the ten miracles, which were brought for our fathers in Egypt and the ten by the sea, \({ }^{7}\) and the ten plagues which the Holy One-blessed be He-brought upon the Egyptians in Egypt. \({ }^{8}\) Zimon is with ten and Kedusha with ten. We do not read in the Torah less than ten passages. Ten malchioth, ten zichronoth and ten shopharoth.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Jer. XVII, 19. \({ }^{2}\) Is. XXXVI, 4.
\({ }^{2}\) Bereshith Rabbah, parasha 12, sect. 10.
"The Pythagoreans had called the ten "perfection," "the world," "the heavens" and "the all." The Arabs knew nothing of the apotheosis of this number. Its place was taken by the number twelve. Cf. Propaedeutik, p. 186.
\({ }^{6}\) Exodus XX, 2-17. " Pirke Aboth V, 6.
\({ }^{\top}\) Idem V. 5. 'Idem V, I.
}

There are nine songs and the tenth refers to the future World, for it is written, "On that day this song will be sung." \({ }^{1}\) Nine sephiroth Israel counts and the tenth is for the Future World, as it is written, "Then the flocks shall pass again under the hands of Him that telleth them, saith the Lord." \({ }^{2}\) Ten kings ruled from one end of the world to the other. And likewise, in ten garments the Omnipotent is enveloped. One is "O Lord my God, thou hast become exceedingly great, with splendor and majesty has Thou clothed Thyself;"3 and the second, "The Lord is King, He is clothed with majesty;"" and the third, "The Lord hath clothed Himself, with strength. He hath girded Himself." \({ }^{\text {. }}\) The fourth, "I saw a high throne and One Ancient of Days was sitting upon it, and His garments were as white as snow ;" \({ }^{\prime}\) and the fifth, "He shall be clothed in righteousness like Sharon." \({ }^{\text {T }}\) The sixth and seventh, "And he donned garments of vengeance." \({ }^{8}\) And the eighth and ninth, "Why are thy garments red?" And the tenth, "Who is this cometh from Edom-this one with his splendid garments?" \({ }^{10}\) And likewise Israel suffered ten exiles: four in the days of Sennacherib, \({ }^{11}\) four in the days of Nebuchadnezzar, and two in the days of Titus and Vespasian.

The world to come is indicated in Holy Writ by twelve expressions which contain the word kallah (bride). They are " . . . . from Lebanon, O bride," 12 "The sound of joy and the sound of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride." \({ }^{13}\) "As the bridegroom rejoices over the bride." \({ }^{14}\) "As the bridegroom decks himself out in glory and the bride dons her ornaments." \({ }^{15}\)

It is thus evident that man is the noblest existent under the sphere of the moon; that he is a microcosm and so constituted as to correspond to the macrocosm. From his thigh down to

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Is. XXVI, 1. \({ }^{2}\) Jer. XXXIII, 13. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. CIV, i.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem XCIII, 1. \({ }^{5}\) Idem XCIII. \({ }^{6}\) Daniel VII, 9. \({ }^{9}\) Is. LX, 17.
\({ }^{8}\) Idem LIX, 7. \({ }^{9}\) Idem LXIII, 2. \({ }^{20}\) Idem LXIII, I.
\({ }^{11}\) According to Bamidbar Rabbah, (parasha 23, sect. 14), and Koheleth Rabbah (parsha 9, sect. 3), Sennacherib was responsible for three exiles.
\({ }^{12}\) Songs of Songs, IV, 8. \({ }^{13}\) Jer. VII, 34; XXV, 10.
\({ }^{14}\) Is. LXII, 5. \({ }^{15}\) Idem LXI, 10.
}
the lowest part of his body he is similar to the element earth. The fullness of marrow which is in his bones makes him similar to the mines which are in the interior of the earth. His abdomen makes him similar to the element water, with its various fish and fluctuating billows. The same may be said of the rattling noise in the intestines and the various intestinal worms. His thorax is similar to the element air, because of the constant fluttering of the lungs; they inhale the air and flap their wings against the heart to equalize the heat and enable man to live. His head is similar to the highest element fire. Moreover, on it are countless hairs, just as in the macrocosm there are countless plants. Likewise his face is cultivated, corresponding to the cultivated tracts in the macrocosm. The nape of the neck is a waste, corresponding to the deserts in the macrocosm. His trembling and the perspiration which appear on him correspond to the thunder and the rain in the macrocosm. The palpitating of the lungs corresponds to the fluttering of the birds in the macrocosm. His shoulders, elbows, knees, buttocks and projecting parts correspond to the mountains and the hills in the macrocosm. In him are different kinds of fluids having a salty taste in his eyes, sweet in his mouth, fetid in the urinal canal, and bitter in his ears. These correspond to the fluids of the macrocosm. These things are as they are owing to the various wishes of the wise Creatormay His Names be sanctified! Truly those wishes are wise and judicious. They say that the water of the sea is salty that the animals round about might live; for if it were sweet the animals would be stricken with cholera, whereas saltiness prevents cholera. \({ }^{1}\) Likewise the eyes are salty because they are fat. Were it not for their saltiness they would become blind, since flesh cannot continue its existence without the aid of salt. That whole subject, however, is extremely subtle, too profound for this treatise, too wonderful, too grand. No one understands it but God and those who are far advanced in the sciences. What we do not understand about the anatomy of man's body exceeds that which is clear to us. How little then do we know of the other sciences! The reader of this book will therefore

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Naturanschaunng, p. 107.
}
be indulgent with us since we have not made therein a single assertion of our own or advanced any theory that we have not heard from others. We have studied the subject and have written this book as a compendium for our youth and for any of our brethren into whose hands it may fall. We ask God's pardon for every misstep and error; we ask His inspiration in the matter of correct judgment, His aid and guidance, . . . \({ }^{2}\) Man's knowledge, glory, excellence and authority, extend over all things, as we pointed out in our prefatory remarks upon the passage: "Thou causest him to rule over the work of Thy hand: all things hast Thou placed under His feet." \({ }^{2}\)

God made man's soul spiritual, noble, subtle, elementary, living, knowing and comprehending. The Praised One desires to direct its attention to the treasures of His wisdom and cause it to testify to the absoluteness of His power and the loftiness of His wisdom that it may serve Him properly and be responsible to Him, beginning with all that is due a master-servitude, submission, service, obedience, accountability and resignation, -and ending with a most cheerful and voluntary submission to His will, and that it should cultivate correct opinion in regard to what He made in it manifest and concealed. And even though her nature rebels she must approach her Creator cheerfully and rightly disposed towards Him to obtain reward and blessing. Holy writ speaks in reference to all these things. As for the creation of man according to His will and as a manifestation of His Glory we have the passage, "All that is called by My Name for My glory have I created it, have formed it, yea, have made it." \({ }^{3}\) Referring to His intention to have them testify to the sublimity of His wisdom and the absoluteness of His power, is the passage, "Ye are my witnesses, saith the Lord, and my servants whom I have chosen in order that ye may know and understand that I am He: Before Me no god was formed and after me there shall be none." \({ }^{\prime}\) Referring to their responsibility to Him for the fulfillment of their religious duties, even as servants are responsible to their masters, is the passage: "As the eyes of servants are unto the hand of their masters, and as the eyes of the handmaid unto the hand of their

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Lacuna. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. VIII, 7. \({ }^{8}\) Is. XLIII, 7. \({ }^{4}\) Is. XLIV, 8.
}
mistress, thus are our eyes unto the Lord, our God, until He have compassion upon us." \({ }^{1}\) And as for submission to His command and decree and pious thoughts concerning Him even though He does unto us what our nature shuns, we have the sentiment of Job, "Though He slay me yet will I hope in Him.". \({ }^{\prime}\) In his spirit the pious and saintly Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah cast themselves into the fire, as thou knowest. \({ }^{3}\) That deed was beloved unto God. In His decrees He did not turn away from them, and they were saved. For they had given themselves up out of love for Him, and yielding to His decree with their lives gladly, willingly and freely. When He beheld the beauty of their faith and that their deed was dictated neither by the desire to obtain favor or reward nor out of fear, He set them free in the way He wished and reserved for them a rich reward, the recompense of the perfect-the possession of eternity. Likewise when Abraham, the Friend of God, was cast by the tyrant into the fire-I refer to Nimrod who cast him into the fire with a ballista-the most High-may His Names be sanctified!-said to Gabriel, "Ask Abraham in the air whether thou canst assist him in something." And he asked in the air, "Can I be of some use to thee?" And Abraham answered, "I need some one else but not thee." And God appeared and set him free by saying, "O flame be thou cold and a security unto Abraham." And had He said "cold" and stopped, the cold would surely have destroyed him. \({ }^{4}\) Thus our Praised One sets free His saints and His God-fearing ones who are humble before Him: "He will never suffer the righteous to totter." It is further written, "The enemy shall not deceive him and the son of unrighteousness shall not retort unto him." I laud Him, give thanks unto Him, and commend my

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. CXXIII, 2. \({ }^{2}\) Job. XIII, 15. \({ }^{2}\) Dan. III.
\({ }^{4}\) Cf. Sura XXI, \(52-75\), Targum Jonathan and Targum Jerushalmi to Gen. XV, 7; Targum Jonathan to Gen. XI, 28; Midrash B'reshith Rabbah, parsha 38, sect. 13̄; Baba Bathra 91a; Logik und Psychologic, p. 164. Rodwell, in his translation of the Kuran, p. 178, note, points out that the Iegend was accepted as a historical fact by some of the Eastern Christians. According to the Syrian calendar the event should be commemorated on January 29th. The Abyssinian calendar has January 25th as the date.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Ps. LV, 23. \({ }^{\circ}\) Ps. LXXXIX, 23.
}
affairs unto Him, according to the words of the prince, "Blessed is the man that trusts in the Lord and whose trust is the Lord." \({ }^{1}\)

Similarly, my brother, God made His most luminous religion after the manner of His world. Thus the religion is one and the Divine Law one, according to the utterances of the most High, "One Torah and One Judgment shall there be unto you." \({ }^{2}\)

Likewise there were Scripture and Tradition, corresponding to the two, according to the dictum of the sages, "Two Torahs were given unto Israel, one written and the other unwritten." \({ }^{3}\) Besides, the Law was given at the hands of two men, Moses and Aaron; and the ten words were brought down on the two Tablets of the Covenant.

Likewise, there correspond to the three: Torah, Prophets and Hagiographa. The sages say, "What is meant by the expression 'Lo, I have written unto you thirds?' They are the three: Torah, Prophets and Hagiographa. They were delivered to three: Moses, Aaron and Miriam. Some say they were all delivered to Moses, for His name contains three letters corresponding to the Ineffable Name." \({ }^{*}\) It is said that the whole of religion consists of that which is derived from reason, the written Law and the traditional Law. Likewise, the people are of three degrees: priests, Levites and laymen. Likewise, there are three Kedushas. The priestly blessing has three sections. Moreover the Torah was given by means of sephor, sepher and sippur. \({ }^{5}\) Likewise, "By three things is the world preserved: by truth, by justice and by peace." \({ }^{\text {" }}\) Likewise, "The world is based upon three things: knowledge, good sentiment "Upon three things the world is based: Upon the Law, upon divine worship and upon deeds of kindness." Of the other meritorious acts they mention, "A man must say within his house on Sabbath eve towards dusk: 'Have ye separated the tithe? Have ye made the erub? Kindle the Sabbath

\footnotetext{
\({ }_{4}^{1}\) Jer. XVII, 7. \({ }^{3}\) Numbers XV', 16. \({ }^{8}\) Gittin, 6b.
\({ }^{4} \mathrm{M}(\mathrm{o}) \mathrm{s}(\mathrm{e}) \mathrm{h}\) (Moses) is simply H (a) \(\mathrm{s}(\mathrm{e}) \mathrm{m}\) the Ineffable Name reversed.
\({ }^{5}\) These three S's correspond to the R's: reading, writing and reckoning. Cf. Friedländer's Jewvish Religion, p. 14.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Pirke Aboth, I, 2.
}
lamp." \({ }^{1}\) We have mentioned all that we could in the third gate of this chapter.

Likewise, the four. God enjoined upon the children of Israel to take in their hands on the Festival of Tabernacles four kinds of plants. \({ }^{2}\) Its mention occurs in the fourth gate of this chapter together with the rest of the Divine Law related to it and concerning the world and man.

Likewise, the five. The Divine Law is the five-fiftlls of the Torah together with what is connected with and related to it of the fives with regard to the Divine Law, the world and man.

Likewise, the six. The science of instruction has for its foundation the six orders of the Mishna and the six orders of the Tosephta with what is concerned with and related to that of the sixes in the case of the Divine Law, the world and man.

Likewise, the seven. It is used most frequently in explaining religion, due to the pre-eminence of the Sabbath Day which the Praised One exalted above other days and enjoined the Children of Isracl to observe and honor it and note its arrival, as we have explained in this chapter. As there is no need to repeat it here we shall not enter further into the subject.

Likewise, the eight: Circumcision is performed eight days after birth, and the Festival lasts eight days when we include the day connected with it. \({ }^{3}\) It is of the same kind as the matters of the Divine Law, the world and man.

Likewise, the nine. We have mentioned as much of it as we could.

Likewise, the ten. The basis of the Divine Law is the ten commandments which embrace the precepts of obedience enjoined in the whole religion. These precepts occur in the contents of the Decalogue, for the number of its letters six hundred and thirteen, together with what is connected with the tens in the Divine Law, in the world and in man.

It has become plain, my brother, that God created all things according to one order, marked by stability and wisdom. Disorder does not enter into it and confusion does not mix with it, as Sacred Writ saith, "How great are thy works, O Lord!

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Mishna, Tractate Shabbath, ch. II, 7. \({ }^{2}\) Leviticus, XXIII, 40.
\({ }^{3}\) The seven days of Succoth and Sh'mini Azereth.
}

In wisdom hast Thou made them all!"1 It is further written, "The Lord founded the earth in wisdom, established the heavens with understanding.," \({ }^{2}\) Thus the Praised One is the Creator of all, their Author an 1 their Governor. I laud Him, am grateful to Him, depend upon Him, and entrust my affairs unto Him, according to the word of David, "The Lord is my Shepherd, I shall not want. In green pastures does He cause me to lie down; by still waters He leads me." \({ }^{3}\) Finished is the second chapter, "Man a Microcosm". There follows

\section*{CHAPTER III.}

This chapter sets forth the duty of rendering obedience to God-praised be He!

It is maintained that the duty of rendering obedience to God is established when we recollect and verify the fact that man is the noblest existent under the sphere of the moon; that in this world he is the viceregent of God, \({ }^{4}\) who made him the ruler over all things that exist as minerals, plants and animals, and that God created bounteous benefits, \({ }^{5}\) among which is the bringing forth of man from non-existence. The choicest and most complete of these benefits are two preeminent boons: one external, the other internal. The external consists in the perfect composition of his body with all the external equipments: flesh, blood, veins, nerves, bones, muscles, nails, marrow, etc.; and perfect with respect to hands, feet, and the organs of the external senses etc. The inward gift is the noble soul which God has graciously bestowed upon him. It is a simple substance, celestial, spiritual, potentially gifted with knowledge, understanding and sensation, \({ }^{\text {b }}\) as described by one of the pious while communing with his Lord. After referring to all that God has created, he continued, "And after all this Thou didst form man for Thy glory and didst create mortal who calls upon Thy Name.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. XXIII, I and 2. \({ }^{2}\) Prov. III, 20. \({ }^{8}\) Ps. XXIII, I and 2.
- Logik, 103 and 104.
©Saadiah's al-Amanat, pp. II4 and I19, and Joseph ibn Zaddik's Olam Katon, p. 58, also make gratitude the incentive to obey God.
-Weltsecle, p. 25.
}

Thou didst breathe into his nostrils a soul precious and pure, unblemished and clean, wise and intelligent, accepting the discipline of wisdom, and acquiring knowledge and discretion, declaring that thou hast formed it and testifying that thou didst create it. Through it every one wise at heart increases his intelligence and recognizes Thee, and from it mortal gets understanding and finds Thee. For Thou hast made it a sign and token for men of wisdom in their resolves, and a swift witness to those who grasp knowledge in their souls. For when the liar lies against Thee, or the denier denies Thee, as a stone from a wall does his soul cry out, and as a lion from the forest does his spirit answer. Therefore all who seek Thee will comprehend Thee in their hearts." It remains to say on this subject that, aside from the thanks which he should render to the Beneficent One-praised be He-it is obligatory for man to submit to two kinds of obedience, the external and the internal.

The external consists in carrying out the law revealed to the prophets-peace be unto them!-in such matters as circumcision, fasting, alms-giving, the pilgrimage, the holy war, and what is similar in the practice of zizith, tephilin, succah, lulab, mezuzoth, and the other mizvoth, which are set forth in the Books of the Law. \({ }^{1}\) The sum thereof amounts to six hundred , and thirteen as Rabbi Saadiah Gaon, of blessed memory, pointed out. \({ }^{2}\) He deduces them from the Decalogue, the number of whose letters is six hundred and thirteen. Of these commands two hundred and forty-eight, corresponding to the number of members in man, are positive. Three hundred and sixty-five are prohibitions, corresponding to the number of veins in man.

The inner obedience is the inner service: the pure thought and the serene, pure heart which is neither alloyed with evil
\({ }^{2}\) Bachya, pp. 3 and 4.
\({ }^{2}\) In the Talmud, Maccoth 23b, Rabbi Simlai explains that six hundred and thitteen commandments were communicated to Moses; three hundred and sixty-five are negative according to the number of days in the solar year, and two hundred and forty-cight positive according to the number of members in the human body. Rabbbi Haninah asked what was the scripture proof for this. The answer was, "Moses enjoined upon us the Torah' (Deut. XXXIII, 4). The numerical value of Tor(a)h is six hundred and eleven. This with 'I am the Lord thy God' (Ex. XX. 2) and 'Thou shalt have no other god besides Me' (F.x. XX, 3), which we heard from the Almighty Himself, makes up six hundred and thirteen."
nor "affected with unsoundness." \({ }^{1}\) The Praised One enjonied that in a number of passages: "And thou shalt love the Lord thy God, with all thy heart;"2 "And thou shalt consider in thy heart." \({ }^{3}\)

Rabbi Bachya ben Joseph ben Pakuda-may God have compassion upon him-wrote a book for guidance in religious paths. To the extent of his ability he considered therein the subject of the duties of the heart, \({ }^{4}\) with demonstrations drawn from the written and traditonal Laws and from the understanding. In the chapter on the Unity of God he makes the remotest cause the cause of causes and identifies it with the Creator. As he himself points out, his whole treatise is concerned with the exhaustive treatment of the inner service with reference to purity of heart and mind, and the will that seeks the favor of God. We have, however, searched into the doctrine of the Unity as expounded by the philosophers \({ }^{5}\) and find that they establish it even more firmly than did Bachya, and in connection with the inner service they speak of a Unity that is likewise firmly established. We shall endeavor to elucidate their view of the matter, not with the intention to controvert the words of Bachyamay God have mercy upon him!-but to confirm the doctrine of God's Unity and the service we must render Him, since for this service did He create us, for it did He bring us into existence. May our children derive benefit therefrom, for the knowledge of this doctrine is a duty incumbent upon us.

Know my brother-may God aid both of us to rectitude and guide us in the right way!-that this subject is one of the mysteries of the Creator-blessed be He!-and a science of great value. This subject should be handled only by the pure. It should be expounded only to those in whom one may be sure that they will guard it very carefully. A learned poet wrote the folowing verses about the guarding of learning: "Fear the Merciful One, O thou who acceptest my doctrine, and do not

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Surah, XXVI, 89. \({ }^{2}\) Detit. VI, 5. \({ }^{3}\) Idem VT, 39.
'The distinction between the duties of the heart and those of the members of the body is mutazilitic. It is attributed to Abu-l-Hudyl-al-Alaf: Schreiner's Der Kalam in der jüdischen Literatur, p. 26.
\({ }^{8}\) The Ihwan as Safa or Brethren of Sincerity.
}
lose it, for God is the Witness! Renounce not what He has bestowed upon thee, for renouncement is the beginning of infidelity. He that accepts what I have taught, he who receives my interpretations is perfect, and both worlds are at his service."

Know that the philosophers well versed in science have gone most profoundly into the subject of cause and effect and that their investigations have resulted in lucid explanations about which there is no disagreement. They derive all things which exist as mineral, vegetable and animal, from the four elementsearth, water, air, fire-their combinations, and the various modifications produced by part of one element affecting a part of another. For instance, fire is the highest element and is followed by the element air, which is between the water and the fire. The nature of air is hot-moist : the moisture which is in it is due to the proximity of one of its sides to the water. And likewise water, whose nature is cold-moist ; the moisture which is in it is due to the proximity of one of its sides to the air; the cold in it is due to the proximity of one of its sides to the earth. Fire is the highest of them and is hot-dry owing to the close proximity of his extreme side to the movement of the sphere. The earth is cold-dry, since it comes after all the others and is their termination. The four elements mentioned are caused by the celestial sphere, the demonstration thereof being quite extensive. The philosophers have treated that matter in their books in a number of places. Similarly the celestial sphere was caused by primal matter and form which emanated from the Universal Soul and that from the Abstract Intellects, as we have mentioned in the first part of the book. These Intellects fashioned and formed in the spheres all that they contain in the way of light and happiness, motion and perpetuity. Similarly the spheres fashioned into the world of nature that which they had acquired from the Abstract Intellects. Thus the Universal Soul was caused by the Intellect which is the cause of causes, brought into existence by the Creator-praised be He !-according to His wish, His will, His command, not through anything and not in anything, as we have mentioned in the Introduction to this book. The Praised One, however, is too transeedent to be de-
scribed as cause or effect, since cause cannot exist apart from effect. The Creator-praised be He!-is beyond the attributes "intellect" and "cause" since He brought forth the Intellect and bestowed upon it life, perfection, eternity (without beginning), perpetuity, eternity (without end), happiness and the like in a single instant, without time and without place. No created thing preceded the creation of the Intellect and knew how it came about, but all was brought into existence afterwards and was conceived in the Intellect potentially until there came forth into actuality thing after thing. The following is the explanation: After the Creator had brought the Universal Reason into existence with absolute perfection, completeness, life, eternity and perpetual happiness, it gazed upon its essence through its essence, as we have mentioned in the Introduction, and there emanated from it the Universal Soul, perpetual life in actuality, in absolute completeness and perfection. It sought to imitate its cause, the Intellect, by sending forth another emanation which reached the sphere, and so on. The soul thus became dual. By means of one of its portions it approaches the Intellect from which it derives benefits and blessings; and by means of the other it bestows upon what is beneath it in degree, light, perpetuity, motion, eternity and happiness, just as the sun grants some of its light to the moon every night. In the beginning of its growth it is a new moon, and increases until the night of its fullness when its radiance resembles that of the sun. It then turns about and decreases after the manner of its increase, until its computed period is covered according to the decree of the Omnipotent One. Thus it is clear that God brought into existence the cause of causes with what he wished and how he wished. But He transcends every epithet, praise, cause and effect. This, then my brother, is an epitome of what our intellect has attained metaphorically concerning the Unity. " God does not burden the soul beyond what it can bear,"" and that above every wise being is the One who is All-Wise.

The inner service is evidently in the heart, the cogitation, the idea, and the imagination. Whatsoever thou thinkest concerning the Creator, bear in mind, that His grandeur far exceeds
such thoughts and imaginings, for He is the One who created them and sowed them in the faculty of man. How can He then be similar to them? If in speaking thou appliest to God the various names with which the prophets designated Him in their sacred books, recognize that necessity compelled them to do it. As a matter of fact, however, every name applies only to what is named, but whatever is named is affected, according to the views of the logicans. \({ }^{1}\) The most exalted, God, however, transcends all affection. It thus comes about, my brother, that if thou speakest thou corporealizest; and if thou art silent, thou deniest and neglectest. And this thou art not allowed to do unless it be, as it has been proved by someone on this subject, by way of confession of powerlessness to express the Unity, which is by itself a declaration of Unity. Verily silence because of weakness is loftier than forever standing in amazement or resorting to subterfuges. This is indicated in the sentiment of the Prince, " Unto thee dumiyah is praise," \({ }^{2}\) for the meaning of dumiyah is " silence," from " wayyiddom Ahron" (" and Aaron was silent." \({ }^{3}\) ) It is, by thy life, a nice interpretation.

The learned have seriously considered this matter. One of them said, "Be not wiser than the prophets who applied to God names with which they designated Him and communed with Him". But they knew not that the prophets had a sign understood only by themselves and the heirs to their knowledge. They were, by my life, exceedingly wise and learned in all that they spoke or wrote, and no one after them ever attained to their degree of dignity. It is allowable, however, for us to designate the Creator-praised and exalted be He!-with the Names they applied to Him.

Some of the learned claim that these names can be interpreted, but they fail to estallish their theory. They do not arrive at their conclusion by lucid demonstrations but by embellished sophistry.

Others say that the Creator spoke to men in a manner that their knowledge should grasp it, and called himself by meta-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Logik, p. 179. Cf. also Kaufmann's Attributenlehre, p. 313 and note 164.
\({ }^{2}\) Ps. LXV, 2. *Lev. X, ふ.
}
phorical names according to the quality of His actions. The necessity to express His mercy gave rise to "The Merciful One;" the necessity to express His compassion, "The Compassionate One;" the necessity to express the idea that He grants us our daily support, "The Supporter;" and the necessity to express the idea that He metes out punishment, "The Punisher;" The sages of blessed memory say, "The Torah speaks the language of men." \({ }^{1}\) And this is also a manifest excuse for the one who cannot investigate and examine.

Others, again, hold that since this sacred Law was brought by messengers from God He is the One who designated His es-sence-sanctified be His Name!-with those names and described it with those wise epithets in the wisdom of His Book. We have nothing to say against using them, but must be satisfied and resign ourselves. Thus if we commune with Him and apply to Him the names and attributes with which His essence is described at the hands of the prophets, no blame attaches to us. This excuse is acceptable since nobody else than He is meant, in spite of their great number.

The erudite philosophers, disciplined in theology, maintain with arguments irrefutable that the soul is confined in the body as the child in the foetal membrane or the chick in the egg, \({ }^{2}\) and that it cannot serve its Creator as is meet and proper unless it recognizes Him as absolutely free of every limitation. As long as its condition is such, as long as it is bound to the world of nature-the world of genesis and decay-it cannot speak except with the tongue, cannot see except with the eye, and cannot hear except with the ear, for it is like an incarcerated man looking through a hole in the wall. The inner service-the consciousness that God is a true unity and transcendent-and patient endurance, exist in it potentially. But when it parts with the body, if it is perfect and pleasing it becomes a monarch in actuality. It assumes the condition of seeing with its whole self, hearing with its whole self and speaking with its whole self, without having any members to use. Holy Writ describes the angels thus

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Baba Mezia 3rb. Also cf. Bachya, ch. I, sect. 19.
\({ }^{2}\) Weltseele, p. 85.
}
in the passage, "And their backs were full of eyes around about on the four sides." \({ }^{1}\) Then true service and praise, sanctification and glorification become perfect in it in common with His angels unto all eternity, yea for ever and ever; while in this mundane dwelling the soul becomes worthy of all that through knowledge, good works, the fear of God, and by undertaking to follow the teachings of the prophets publicly and privately, without doubting and without dissimulation, and without love of hypocrisy or flattery, but solely through love for God. This love for God is shown by leading a pious, God-fearing life.

To be sure, the service that is inspired by the desire for permanent happiness and by the fear of excruciating torment is also called service, and does not entail disappointment. There is hope in both kinds of service, but the one with which we are dealing is the more excellent and the nobler. With this in mind the sages of blessed memory said, "Be not like servants that serve their master with a view to receiving recompense, but be like servants that serve their master without a view to receiving recompense ; and let the fear of Heaven be upon you." \({ }^{2}\) A learned man expresses this sentiment in verse:
" My Cod, I desire not of Thee a ruby mansion peopled with girls! Or Gardens of Eden-O, my Hope!-or trees adorned with luscious fruit.

My petition? Thy yearned for Countenance."
Work zealously in this direction, for in this is real glory.
Another says,
"By Thy Truth, I have not looked with yearning eye to anything but to Thee, that I should see Thee."

May both of us attain the highest degree in religion, in this world and in the world to come, for the Most High hearkens graciously and benignantly to Him who calls upon Him. I implore forgiveness of Him, return repentant to Him, ask His aid, have confidence in Him, and commend my affairs into His care, even as His favorite communed, "The Lord is with me, I shall not fear. What can man do unto me?"3 "The Lord is my Shepherd, I shall not want. In pleasant

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Ez. I, 18. \({ }^{2}\) Pirke Aboth I, 3. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXVIII, 6.
}
pastures He causes me to lie down."1 With the help of God and by his command we have finished the third chapter dealing with the necessity of rendering obedience to God and serving Him. There follows it

\section*{CHAPTER IV.}

This chapter deals with penance and turning the attention to God, circumspection towards God, the pre-eminence of the learned, humility before God, and continence in worldly matters.

Know, my brother-may God direct both of us upon the right path and lead us to righteousness !-that God, anticipating through His presence that many men would prefer disobedience to obedience and would therefore be deserving of severe punishment and rigorous chastisement, manifested His leniency and mercy by providing them with something wherewith to mollify their obduracy and turn aside from disobedience. This is called repentance; it opens unto them the gates. It existed before creation in the primeval world. Only those well versed in theology attain knowledge of its inner meaning. Had the Torah permitted the exposition thereof, we would, through the favor and grace of God, explain what they knew of it. Verily Holy Writ speaks of that amongst the first of the created things, as we have mentioned in connection with the saying of the sages of blessed memory, "Seven things were created before the world was created," repentance being one of them. The proof of that is the passage, "Before the mountains were brought forth . . . Thou didst turn man to contrition." \({ }^{2}\) We have spoken of that in the Introduction to this book. This subject involves a profound mystery which is attained only by the learned-the heirs of the prophets-and by the one who acquires it from them,-may God direct him aright! We shall

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. XXIII, 1 and 2. \({ }^{2}\) Idem XC, 2 and 3.
}
dwell on this subject in order to mention something about the pre-eminence wherewith God distinguishes the learned and something about the excellence of learning, since therein is great profit for us, for our youth and for all our brethrenmay He direct all to His obedience! After that we shall return to the explanation, as far as we can, of the various kinds of repentance, its conditions, its esoteric meaning and its adjuncts, please God.

Know, my brother, that knowledge is the most excellent of the creations of God since through it God is known, is declared a unity, is served and obeyed. It preceded Reason, since God is described by means of it, but is not described with the term "Intellect." For we say that "God is knowing" but not "God is understanding." Moreover, everyone who knows reasons, but not everyone who reasons knows. God is described with the epithet "knowing" in a number of passages. In the Torah we read, "For God knoweth that on the day you eat," \({ }^{1}\) etc.; in the Hagiographa, "The Lord knoweth the days of the perfect;" \({ }^{2}\) and in the Prophets, "I say, O Lord God, Thou knowest." \({ }^{3}\) There are many other passages similar to these, for knowledge is the noblest of all things. Although the people of this world regard nothing more precious than gold and jewels, wisdom is described as even more precious than these, for it is written, "It is more precious than pearls, and all the delightful things do not equal it;"4 and furthermore, "I make man more precious than fine gold, yea more precious than the excellent gold of Ophir." \({ }^{5}\) The passage refers to the possessors of wisdom. Again, the people of this world regard nothing sweeter than honey, but wisdom is described as nobler and sweeter, for we read, "And sweeter than honey and the drippings of honeycombs." \({ }^{6}\) It is, longer than the earth and broader than the sea, according to the passage, "Her measure is longer than the earth and broader than the sea." And finally, wisdom is described as the origin of things, not as originating from anything; for its nature must be referred back to its Creator: "Mortal knoweth not its value, and it is not to be

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Gen. III, 5. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. XXXVII, 18. \({ }^{3}\) Ez. XXXVII, 3.
\({ }^{-}\)Prov. III, 15. \({ }^{5}\) Is. XIII, 12. \({ }^{\circ}\) Ps. XIX, 11. \({ }^{7}\) Job. XI, 9.
}
found in the land of the living. God understandeth its way." \({ }^{1}\) Praised be the One who possesseth knowledge of things before their existence, during their existence and after their existence !

The pre-eminence of learning, my brother, is indicated by the fact that it is more precious than wealth. A sultan may lay violent hands upon thy wealth, but not upon thy learning. Robbers and rebels may seize a man's wealth, they cannot seize his learning. And again, if his ship with his wealth sink in the sea, his learning remaineth. When thou givest of thy wealth there is dimunition, but learning does not decrease in this wise : for when thou scatterest all thy wealth thou becomest poor, but when thou scatterest learning, thou dost not become poor but dost increase. Likewise, the treasures of wealth pass away but the treasures of wisdom remain. It is said concerning wisdom that were bodies to disappear their knowledge would nevertheless persist. We could continue with the elucidation of some of the excellencies of wisdom but these pages do not permit it.

Now, my brother, true knowledge postulates a necessary sequent: the act inspired by it. From knowledge issues forth the deed which is its fruit, otherwise it will not benefit thee. It becomes a cost and a care to the one who does not act through it-from that may God in His mercy free both of us!! It has been pointed out that "learning involves four processes : attention, retention in memory, conveying into practice and the diffusing of it." \({ }^{2}\) Concerning that a learned poet says, "Come now, thou canst obtain knowledge only through six things (which we mention without analyzing their significance) : quickness of understanding, eager desire, patience, a sufficiency for one's maintenance, the instruction of a teacher and length of time." There are many sayings about learning. "Learning is the parent and the deed is the child." "Learning is a tree and the deed is the fruit." If God could have given a form to learning it would have illuminated night and if He had given a form to ignorance it would have darkened the sun. "The learned are strangers to the thoughts of the ignorant."

\footnotetext{
= Job XXVIII, 23. \({ }^{2}\) Cf. Mibhar Hapeninim, p. 5.
}
"At first wisdom tastes bitter; at last, sweeter than honey." "O seeker of wisdom, seize it despite its opposition; and remember that the meadow of learning is divided up by two streams." "Knowledge calls for deeds; if its possessor listens to this call all is right, if not it vanishes." The sages say, "He who learns in order to practice, to him the means will be vouchsafed to learn, to teach and to practice." \({ }^{1}\) As for the Law, in it God enjoins upon us practice in many places, e. g., "And ye shall do them,"2 "God commanded us to do,"3 and many such in the Torah, the Prophets and the Hagiographa.

Concerning the love of learning the eloquent poet Solomon Hakatan says,
"How can I forsake wisdom
Since the spirit of God has made a covenant betwixt us?
Or how can she forsake me
Since she is my mother and I the child of her old age?"
Another philosophical poet says, "Learn, for no man is created learned, and the ignorant can not be a brother to the learned. If the chief of the people possesses not learning he is too insignificant that the assemblies should turn unto him. Turn not aside from the study of religion, but diligently strive to master its first principles."

We shall now enter as far as we can into the subject of the pre-eminence of the learned.

Know, my brother-God strengthen both of us in His mercy! -that for every created thing the Creator set a goal which it reaches and where it halts. This goal is represented among the stones by the ruby, among the trees by the palm, among the animals by man, and among the jinns by the angels. But God Himself so far transcends comparison, similitude, representation, and the application of sacred numbers that he cannot be comprehended by the intellect be the thought ever so profound. In this sub-lunar world He created minerals, plants and animals. Of the non-liquefiable minerals He made a superior kind, the ruby; and of the liquefiable metals there is a superior kind, gold, which is very closely related to plants since it grows like them. Of the plants He made a noble species,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Pirke Aboth IV, 8. \({ }^{2}\) Deut. IV, 6, et passim. \({ }^{3}\) Idem VI, 24.
}
the palm tree, which is very closely related to animals, since the male fertilizes the female which will otherwise not bear fruit; and when its top is lopped off the tree, animal-like, it dies. Similarly, God placed among animals a creature of the same class as man, the ape. In the horse also there is sagacity superior to that of other animals; and likewise the elephant accepts instruction more readily than other animals. \({ }^{1}\) All these are lower in degree than man. Since such is the case it necessarily follows that there must be in the genus man a class resembling the angels. This class consists of the prophets and their heirs, the latter being the imams, the administrators, the learned and the wise. Hence it is clear that the learned, the heirs of the prophets, \({ }^{2}\) are the noblest of human beings and in this world potentially angels, and that when God translates them to His Glorious Mansion they become angels in actuality. \({ }^{3}\) Consider, my brother, how splendid this arrangement is: the last member of each series is connected with the first of the succeeding series. It is the Praised God who creates, originates, forms and directs these series as He wishes and how he wishes, and He knows better than the learned.

Returning to what we were saying concerning the subject of repentance we note that the learned have decided the stages of repentance, its significance and its motives. As they explained in their books, they assigned to it four stages: the abandonment of sin, regret, asking of forgiveness and the assurance on the part of the offender that he will not repeat the \(\sin .^{4}\) They have classified the subject most carefully, but we shall dispense with this minute classification so as not to treat our subject at too great a length. They hold that if a man intends to repent or to act uprightly and death falls upon him before he repents or performs his intended good deed, God generously inscribes him in the book of the penitents. Like-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Naturarschaunng, pp. 179 and 182, agrees with Nathanel in making the palm tree the link between the vegetable and an:mal kingdoms, and in placing the ape, horse and elephant near man. The Ihwan differ, however, by making moss the plant-mineral and the mushroom the mineral-plant. \({ }^{2}\) Weltseele, p. 139. \({ }^{3}\) Anthropologic, p. 129; Logik, 165.
‘Bachya VII, 4; Saadiah's Al-Amanat, p. 177.
}
wise, when a man intends to commit a wicked deed but death overtakes him before he does, God in His clemency does not inscribe it against his name; for the Praised One is clement towards His servants, long suffering, abounding in loving kindness, ever inclining to mercy. The sages of blessed memory say, "Let not a man despair of mercy even though a sword rest upon his neck," for never should a man despair or be hopeless of the mercy of God. A learned man said, "In the temple of worship discordant lamentations and harmonious intentions annul what the spheres have decreed."

The conditions of repentance and its adjuncts are humility, continence, discipline, fasting, charity and beseeching pardon for sinners. We shall mention something about each and every one of these ciasses, for even a little discipline benefits the noble soul but much does not turn aside the ignorant, as is written, "A reproof enters deeper into a man of sense than a hundred stripes into a fool." \({ }^{1}\)

The bliss of continence is indicated in the request of the Patriarch Jacob: "If God will be with me and give me bread to eat and a garment to put on." \({ }^{2}\) These things are prime necessities. In addition a man should wed a pious woman, one who guards her purity and is obedient to her Creator. A certain scholar said, "He who ever fears and revers his God and has a home that affords him comfort, a farm that supplies a sufficiency, and a wife that is congenial, enjoys a full measure of God's favor." Concerning continence an Arabian poet says, Shun this world, even when thou reachest its favors, for through them thou disdainest the religious affairs. Continence of this world consists in thrusting it aside and yielding not to the folly of the eye." It is further said, "When the continent man flees from men, they seek him; but when he seeks them, they flee from him." Another says, "Avoid sinning against God, that God may love thee. Shun what men possess that men may love thee." A certain scholar says, "Whosoever shuns this world is serene of heart and has naught to fear from the envious. But whosoever desires this world is forever grieved and numerous are his enemies." Another says, "Whosnever

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Prov. XVII, ro. \({ }^{\mathbf{1}}\) Gen. XXVIII, 20.
}
shuns this world escapes its sins and the suffering of its people and need not fear punishment after death." Another says, whosoever seeks the world must necessarily suffer a two-fold misery: he envies the man who is above him and is envied by him who is beneath him. Another says, "If a man, seeking the things of the world, attains that which wearies, he leaves it to others; and if he fails to attain it, he dies in sorrow." Another says, "How near is regret to the one who seeks the things of the world, and how near is peace to the one that eschewes them!" Another says, "Those who zealously strive to increase their bodies are on a plane with those who zealously apply themselves to the worship of idols." Another says, "The desolation of the intellect keeps pace with the cultivation of the body." Another says, "How foolish the man that trusts in this world despite the artifices it has practiced on his predecessors!" Another says, "The intelligent man is he who takes an example from others ere he would become an example to others" A pious man, when asked his opinion about this world, responded, "What can I say concerning a dwelling upon whose very threshold there is trouble, a dwelling which we must leave empty-handed? A strict account is kept of how we use its permitted things, and indulgence in its forbidden fruits entails punishment. When a man becomes rich in this world he is ill at ease; and when he is poor, he is sad. One person works zealously for it, and it escapes him, while another sits still and it comes to him. As one regards it it regards him. Whosuever fixes his gaze upon it it blinds. While the pious man was thus blaming the world, another who was present said, "Do not disparage it effhand, for it is a dwelling of righteousness to him that lives righteously in it, a safe dwelling to the one that understands it, and a rich dwelling to the one that manages to get a bed in it. It is a place of divine Revelation, the prayer house of his messengers, the mosque of his prophets and the market-place of His favorites where they purchase Paradise, wherein they obtain mercy." It is also said, "Do not make efforts to gain this world seeing that it is permanent for no one. Neither do thou cast it aside seeing that the Future World is bestowed only through it." A pious man noticing a fellow
strutting about conceitedly remarked, "How can be proud one whose return is eternal! Time is his bed-fellow, his benefactor, his brother and his friend. If it is hard against him he will surely be crushed into the dust, and if he weakens but for a moment it thrusts him into the very jaws of death." Another said, "How can be proud one whose origin is a foul drop and his end a filthy carcass and in the meantime a vase of dirt." Another said, "The body ere it became a drop in the membrane slept in the blood of the bowels, a growing evil. Was he not near urine and ordure even though he is smeared with the finest of all ointments? He covers his wens with a pair of camisoles and envelops himself in a mantle. How are all his excellences brought low! Verily after his death tears do not follow him." Another said, "How strange it is to see a man proud, he who has passed through urinal passages three times! How can he be proud!" There are many such sent1ments, but we shall not adduce further citations. One of the wise continent men, Rabbi Jehudah Hallewi, said, "How can he be arrogant who was formed in the waters of semen, in the waters of uncleanliness? Who is considered as a resident stranger and dies leaving behind all those things in which the delighted-e'en his food and drink-and the end of his days are in the waters of measure? Not a moment without accident, not an accident without terror! The perfect is not perfect without price, and man is not redeemed from Sheol unless he be acceptable and has found grace, who having sinned confesses and brings near song and praise in lieu of shrine and sacrifice. Unto the Lord our God are mercy and pardon."

Several learned men addressed themselves to a preacher and said unto him, "Counsel us, our master." To this he responded, "It is incumbent upon you to obey God, avoid excesses in food and speech, and bear the pain of the world." And they said unto him, "What advantage is therein?" He answered, "As for obedience to God, happiness is bestowed through it. When the pleasure of eating is given up the desires die out. When the pleasure of sleep is put aside you consider the creation of the earth and of the heavens. In bearing the sorrows of your fellow-creatures you obtain all you wish
and your soul becomes like a king in his garden, like a horse in the meadow." It is related that a certain khalif found a continent man standing in a House of God. The khalif, addressing him said, "Ask something and thy demand will be granted." To this the continent man replied, "I show my God reverence. How can I be in His House and request anything of others?" Another said, "Oh the loving-kindness of God! He inspires man to obey. He increases his faith and contentment, teaches him religion, aids him, frees him from the slanderer, gives him employment in His world and makes him the master of his desire. But it comes about that men grow wicked and leave this world without provision." Another said, "Men write the best they hear in order to retain in memory the best they write. They speak about the best they hear and practice the best they know." We are told that a good man was being followed and abused by an impudent fellow to whom he paid no attention. Whereupon the shameless fellow cried, "Ho there, I mean you." He replied, "I'll have nothing to do with you." They say that a shameless fellow abused a righteous man with the words, "Your mother did so and so." He replied, "If what you say is true may God pardon her. And if what you say is false may God pardon you." It is also narrated that a calumniator came to a certain pious man with slander, whereupon the pious man retorted, "Slander is abominable. Were your charge true verily we would search out what you added to it. And even if it turned out true we would detest you. And if it proved to be false, we would punish you. But if you would have us pardon you, we shall pardon you." And he replied 'Forgive me!' So he forgave him." It is also narrated that a calumniator hastened to a certain king, whereupon the king queried, 'Wouldst thou have us hear from thy rival concerning thee just as we have heard from thee concerning him?' And he answered, 'No, pardon me.' So he pardoned him." A certain king remarked, "Verily I esteem the aweetness of forgiveness above and beyond the sweetness of revenge." A pious man in his communion with God exclaimed, "O God! my sin is great, my prison inaccessible, and my chain strong; but thou art a clement creditor." Another said, " O

God, were it not that thou dost put me to shame because of my \(\sin\) I would not fear thy punishment; and were it not for the comforting thought of Thy mercy, I would not hope for Thy recompense." Another says, "O God, forgive my sins, cover up my vices and let me attain both Dwellings, my Beloved." Another says, "O God, Thou knowest my sins, put them to flight. Thou knowest my vices, veil them over. Thou knowest my needs, supply them." Says another, "O God, have mercy upon thy servant whom hope draws along, labor crushes, and death seeks." Another says, "O God, we yearn to obey Thee, but have fallen short of it; we are loth to disobey Thee, but have been guilty of disobedience. Do Thou give us our daily bread from Paradise. And if we are not worthy of it then at least save us from the Fire even though we are worthy of it." Another says, " O God have mercy upon Thy servant who awaits Thy recompense, who fears Thy punishment. By the truth of Thy prophets and Thy Book, place me among those who love Thee. Verily there is no might and no power save Thine." It is narrated that when a certain sinner was at the point of death someone present asked him, "What excuse wilt thou render thy Master?" Weeping, he raised his voice and answered, " Am I not in the presence of God! Since when has He not forgiven my sin? If pardon may be expected from the sons of man why may I not expect it from my Master?"

Since we have mentioned something about continence, discipline and humility, we shall now refer to the excellence of charity and fasting.

Know my brother-may God aid us both to His favor!that the learned have encouraged the exercise of kindness in many dicta. Man's reason urges the necessity of showing kindness to those worthy of it and to those unworthy of it, that kindliness may become habitual to the soul. One of the learned says, " Perform the good deed though it be out of place; for no one ever lost a good deed, no difference where he put it." One of the saints said, "Do good to anyone whom you consider worthy of it, for even if he is not worthy of it there
is no loss." Holy Writ saith, "Cast thy bread upon the waters for after many days shalt thou find it." \({ }^{1}\)

Some of the learned esteem fasting above charity and confirm their view with the saying of the sages, "This man with his body and this man with his money." \({ }^{2}\) The proof is that when tle soul lacks the food with which it is usually nourished it turns upon the volatile substances and the blood, in lieu of what it has been deprived of and burns them in its fire, thereby nourishing its body. Because of this, fasting is superior to charity.

Some there are who claim that charity is superior to fasting inasmuch as the charitable man revives the souls of the weak and thereby brightens their eyes which have been darkened by poverty. Another holds, "The fast of the rich man is more meritorious than his charity, for everyone sees him give alms but does not see him afflict himself with fasting. On the other hand the charity of the poor man is more meritorious than his fasting for he gives alms from an afllicted soul." Both views are indeed admirable.

The learned have uttered a number of dicta concerning the excellence of charity, and in their works have expounded it at some length. The Sacred Scriptures tell us that it delivereth from death: "Charity delivereth from death." \({ }^{3}\) Some hold that charity in secret is more excellent than charity in public; others that charity in public is more excellent than charity in secret. Public charity is claimed to be superior since it enables men to take example from one another, and the poor profit thereby. Both views are indeed admirable. Charity in secret is well for the one who has never shown his face and is not accustomed to accept it. His reputation is protected in that people do not notice him. For him charity in secret is preferable. Charity in public is more excellent for him who uncovers his face, being accustomed to taking it. It is preferable to pauperizing him in secret. Taking all things into consideration we find that each method speaks well for the giver since he has as his goal the countenance of God who multiplies his

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ecclesiastes XI, I. \({ }^{2}\) Berachot, 32b.
\({ }^{8}\) Cf. Shabbath 156b; Succah 49b.
}
reward since with his charity he does not seek the thanks of man.

If anyone upon whom God bestowed wealth in this world fails to fulfil his duty towards God and towards the weak, and does not use his wealth to good purpose, he is like the man who walks in darkness although he has olive oil. It comes about that his ease prompts him to live the life of the miser, and he must suffer the penalty incurred by the wealthy. He cannot escape one or the other of two misfortunes which God, with his Divine seal, decrees in this mundane dwelling: either his wealth passes to someone else, perhaps to a violent sultan, or is stolen, burnt or sunk in the sea, while he looks on; or there happens what is worse than that-the property is left to his heirs or others than his heirs. One of the learned uttered an apt sentiment in reference to the evil of the miser's wealth: "Either through accident or to his heir." \({ }^{1}\) A Hebrew poct says,

> "Choose death and know what it is, But ask not a favor of the depraved."

The sages say, "Let a man die rather than be dependent upon his fellow creatures"-that means upon their compassion. Concerning that an Arabian poet said in rhythmic strain,

> "If trifles would worry thee day by day
> Let contentment yield satisfaction and joy."

He also says, "nothing is worse for good men than to be obliged to have recourse to the wicked: it is easier to face death than to ask them for what you need." He further says, "In this world generous men take the lead; in the world to come, the God-fearing." Thou hast learnt what the experience of Prince David was when necessity compelled him to resort to Nabal the Carmelite, and what the outcome of that affair was. The following advice is offered to scholars, "Do not make the mistake of seeking your needs at the gates of the rich, for they do not betake themselves to your gates. They speak ignorantly of what we have, but we speak with full
\({ }^{2}\) I. e. The wealth is lost either through some mishap or goes to the heir.
knowledge of what they have." \({ }^{1}\) A hero once remarked, "I would rather die amongst slaves and scissor-grinders than to receive favors from a dishonorable fellow." It is thus incumbent upon thee, my brother, to do all that thou canst for thyself.

As for the charitable man, God grants him his requests. For it is written, "Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry?" and after that, " Then shalt thou call and the Lord shall answer; thou shalt cry, and He shall say, Here am I."3 There is special reference to the relative, for it is written, "From thy own flesh, do not hide thyself." \({ }^{4}\) We find further that "the cruel man troubleth his relatives." \({ }^{5}\) The excellence of charity has been emphasized by the sages in a number of instances: "The charitable man can stand in the presence of the Sekhinah, for it is written, 'Though charity shall I see Thy face. Thus the patriarchs earned this world and the world to come through the merit of charity and good works. In the case of Abraham, our father, it is written, 'For I know that he will command his sons and his house after him to observe the way of the Lord to do charity and justice.' In the case of Isaac it is written, "And Isaac sowed in that land." Now the term "sowing" is applied only to charity, for it is written, "Sow unto yourselves charity." In the case of Jacob it is written, "I am unworthy (katonti) of all the kindnesses," etc. "Katonti" has reference only to meät (little), and meät applies only to charity, for it is written, " Better is a little with charity," etc. In the case of Moses our master, what is written? "He did the charity of the Lord and His judgments with Israel." What is written in the case of David? "Through charity shall I see Thy face!" When a man opens his hand and gives charity the Holy One opens unto him the treasures of Tis goodness, for it is written, " God will open unto thee His goodly treasures, the heavens." \({ }^{7}\) Man

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Compare Mibhar Hapeninim, p. 5: "A sage was asked, Who are the superior, the learned or the rich?' He answered, 'The learned.' 'If that is so,' was the further query, 'why are the learned more frequently at the doors of the rich than the rich at the doors of the learned? He answered, 'Because the learned recognize the value of wealth; but the wealthy do not recognize the value of learning.'"
\({ }^{2}\) Is. LVIII, 7. 'Idem 9. \({ }^{\text {I I Idem 7. }}{ }^{5}\) Prov. XI, 17. \({ }^{\circ}\) Compare Yalkut Emor, (Yalkut Eliezer sub. Zedakah, sect. 84.) \({ }^{\text {ºn }}\) Deut. XXVIII, 12.
}
should learn from his body, for every time he braids his hair he changes. Whenever the Holy One gives him possessions and he turns his eyes away from charity he loses one-sixth of his goods: they slip from him and become the possession of some one else.

Similarly, my brother, the excellencies of fasting are manifest and its benefits many. It manifestly benefits by serving to discipline the soul in the doing of good, by slaying the desires and by excising the humors. The inner benefits arise from making all the members of the body abstain from what God gives so generously. That is to say, he should keep his eyes from looking upon what God has forbidden unto him in the way of people, etc.; that he should withdraw his hand from taking what God has forbidden unto him; that he should not do violence to the weak, resorting to violence only when absolutely necessary ; and that he should close his ears to what God has forbidden him to hear. Thus spoke the prophet, "He that walketh righteously and speaketh uprightly, that despiseth the gain of oppression, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil-he shall dwell on high." \({ }^{1}\) If he hears derogatory remarks about himself he overlooks them, thus restraining his tongue from excess of speech, obscenity and insult.

Truly the tongue is man's most potent foe. The learned have had much to say about controlling that which controlls man. They go to the utmost limit in censuring him who lets it go untethered. One of them said, " Better a slip of the foot than a slip of the tongue." "Another expressed himself in rhymed verse, "Guard thy tongue-oh man!-let it not sting thee! It is a serpent. How many there are in the grave slain by the tongue, who would have prefered arrows in its place." The sages-peace be upon them!-have condemned the evil tongue, as thou hast learnt. They go so far as to compare it with the three cardinal transgressions: idolatry, incest and bloodshed. They vindicated their assertion in the following manner. "Concerning idolatry it is written, 'Lo,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Is, XXXIII, 15 .
}
the erring of this people is great.' Concerning incest it is written, 'Lo, how can I do this great evil?' And concerning bloodshed it is written, 'My inquity is too great for me to bear.' But in the case of the evil tongue it is written, 'The Lord will cut off all lips of flattery, yea the tongue that speaketh arrogantly." \({ }^{1}\) What the prophets have to say about it is sufficiently summed up in their dictum, "Death and life are in the power of the tongue." \({ }^{2}\) More praiseworthy is it for the tongue to abstain from talking than from tasting.

Likewise man should withhold his feet from going to improper places and from companionship with the wicked, seeing that the prophet has forbidden us to associate with them, walk with them or sit with them, as it is written, "O the happiness of the man who walketh not in the counsel of the wicked!" \({ }^{3}\) Solomon-peace be unto him!-says, "My son, go not on the way with them-their feet are bent upon wickedness." \({ }^{4}\)

Likewise he should guard his private parts and his purity against the things which have been forbidden unto him. Especially should this be the case with the circumcised member which serves as a sign of the covenant which God made with our father Abraham, according to the passage, "My covenant shall be in your flesh for an everlasting covenant." \({ }^{5}\) God emphasizes the importance of this covenant by mentioning it thirteen times.

The same holds good with the internal members of the body. It is a duty incumbent upon man to restrain them from disobedience, not to think of wrongdoing or of harming any one unnecessarily, even as it is written in regard to the one who thinks of doing wrong, "He thinks upon his couch." \({ }^{6}\) When a man realizes the whole, the greater part or even a small portion thereof, and in addition to this abstains from food, that is the fast which is truly pleasing to God. Eventually all his members render obedience to God, giving thanks unto Him, according to the passage, "All my bones shall say, ' \(O\) Lord, who is like unto Thee?" " \({ }^{7}\) The Praised One has made this grand duty incumbent upon us to benefit us in His noble

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Midrash Shoher Tob, sect. 52. \({ }^{2}\) Prov. XVIII, 21. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. I. I.
\({ }^{4}\) Prov. I, \(15 .{ }^{5} \mathrm{Gen}\). XVII, I3. \({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Ps}\). XXXVI, 5. \({ }^{\text {T}}\) Ps. XXXV, 10.
}
mansion, for it is written, " And the Lord commanded us to do all these statutes for our good." \({ }^{1}\)

The fourth chapter is finished. There follows it

\section*{CHAPTER V.}

This chapter treats of reliance upon God in regard to life, death, our daily necessities and all other matters.

The chapter dealing with reliance upon God in the matter of asking for our daily necessities; and the like of other matters, religious and worldly.

Know, my brother, that the supplying of daily necessities is a wonderful matter \({ }^{2}\) and that God takes care of the daily maintenance of His creatures from the small to the great, "from the horns of the reëm to the eggs of the nest." It is more painful for the servant of God to look for his daily necessities than to die. A pious man was asked by a certain person, "Were I to close my gate would my daily necessities come to me?" He answered, "Yes." "What is thy proof?" He answered, "It is just as clear as if thou were to lock thy gate and thy destined moment would come to thee." And the pious man added, "Had the world put their confidence in God for daily sustenance, He would have supplied them as He supplies the bird; the birds, when they go away to look for pasture are famished but return sated."

It is said that Moses, while communing with the Most High, asked, " O Lord, how dost Thou provide men's daily sustenance?" He answered, "I cause their daily sustenance to come from one another." "Make that clear to me," requested Moses. Then God commanded that he alone of the Children of Isracl should kindle a light. So they removed all fire from their midst, leaving only the torch of Moses burning in the morning. Then the Children of Israel undertook to light their torches from this torch first and some lit from others. Scarcely had the night set in when all their dwellings were illuminated, all the lamps in their dwellings having been lit. Thercupon the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Deut. VI, 24. \({ }^{3}\) B'reshith Rabbah, parasha 20, sect. 9.
}

Praised One said to Moses, "Thus my creatures get their daily support from one another."

It is related that Solomon, the son of David, asked the Creator what was His secret in supporting His creatures, whether one was forgotten. God answered, "Not one is forgotten, O Solomon." Meanwhile, on that day, stones from huge rocks were being split for the Temple with saws made of diamond. And lo and behold within a rock they found a worm growing in tender herbage from which it derived nourishment. And God said unto him, "See, O Solomon, have I forgotten this, although it is in the belly of the rock?"

He has made for thee only that which He saw was most fit, most proper and most beneficial for thee. Couldst thou see what is being done for thee, thy nature would shrink back, thou woulds feel annoyed and make thee grieve, thy heart would become contracted.

It is therefore necessary that thou shouldst accept it with thanks, for the Creator knoweth better than thou what is for thy good. He is surety for thee, caring for thee from thy inception as a drop until the completion of thy creation in the womb. He brought thither thy sustenance by way of a very narrow path when thou couldst not reach it with a created hand. Moreover He brought thee forth through a most difficult path to a pleasanter condition, and created food for thee in the breasts of thy mother. Thus He provides for thee at all times -in thy earliest growth, in the very beginning, and even until there comes upon thee old age and hoariness. He never abandons thee. Finally He translates thee to His noble Mansion. To that the prophets referred when they said, "For thou art He that took me out of the womb. Thou didst make me hope when I was upon my mother's breasts. I was cast upon Thee from the womb; from the womb of my mother hast Thou been my God." \({ }^{1}\) It is further written, "If my father and my mother forsake me then the Lord will take me up;" "Also in old age and hoariness He will not forsake thee." \({ }^{3}\)

Concerning piety and reliance upon God the sage says, "In

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. XXII, iо and ir. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. XXVII, io. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. LXXI, 18.
}
reference to those who rely upon God in their youth what does he say? 'Those who trust in the Lord renew their strength.' What does he say those who rely upon God in their old age? 'I am He until old age and hoariness.'" Do not permit thyself to believe, my brother, that God after imposing a duty upon thee repudiates thee and forsakes thee in thy old age. Were the whole world to get together to whiten one of thy black hairs before God decreed it,-were they to dye it with all the world's asparagus or other dyes-it would not whiten until the time decreed for it by God. Likewise were they all to get together to increase thy sustenance by a grain or thy life by an hour or a minute, or to bring thee forth from the womb of thy mother before the appointed time by a moment, they would be utterly impotent to do any of these things. Verily all is in the hand of the Creator-praised be He!-as it is written, " In whose hand is the soul of all the living and the spirit of the flesh of every man." \({ }^{1}\) Whosoever relies upon God, God gives him a sufficiency; and whosoever asks His help, He helps. One of the learned says, "Confidence insures sufficiency." They also say, " Three laugh at three: death at hope, power at fear, a daily sufficiency at greediness." Again. "Daily bread is of two kinds: the daily bread which seeks thee and that which thou seekest. How much better is that which seeks thee, for if thou dost not go to it, it cometh to thee. Oh how much more pleasant is that which seeks thee!" And furthermore, "The world has two days: a day for thee and a day against thee. What is to be for thee comes upon thee and what is to be against thee thou canst not push off with all thy might and main."

It is narrated that a pious man passed among people who sold portions of meat on trust for a certain length of time. They asked him to take a piece and offered to give him the same length of time to pay the price as they gave to other people. As he was loth eo do it they pressed him telling him that they had put off the payment of the price twice as long as people usually do. But still he refused. He said unto them, "I have taken counsel of my soul and it has offered to give

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Job. XII, 10.
}
me a respite from eating meat twice as long as the time you would postpone payment." He then proceeded on his journey. They say: "If thou wouldst borrow money to spend it upon the desires of the soul when thou art hard pressed, ask thy soul to borrow from the purse of her patience and wait until times are better. If it does it by so doing thou art rich; but when it refuses, it will find all kinds of excuses, heaps of excuses."

There is a story told about a wretched beggar who came upon a greedy man eating his meal at dusk. The beggar made it plain that he was famishing and entreated him for something wherewith to relieve his hunger. The greedy fellow, however, refused to give the beggar anything to eat. The latter thereupon went his way. Here and there amongst dry herbage he found some banana peels which served to satisfy his hunger. While he was eating the greedy fellow overtook him and thrust upon himaloaf ofbread.The poorman, loth to take the loaf from the greedy fellow, remarked, "Had God wished thee good thou wouldst surely have given me supper at the time I asked. Now I have relieved my weakness with what thou seest."

One of the philosophers says, "Who fears God, God makes all things fear him; but whosoever does not fear God, God makes him fear all things." Another says, "Behold God says to the world, 'Whosoever serves Me , do thou serve ; but whosoever serves thee, make him serve'." It is narrated of a certain king that he passed by a pious man who failed to rise in his honor. When the servants of the king berated him, he retorted, " I will not rise in the presence of the servant of my handmaid." The king thereupon stopped and asked, "How canst thou say that I am the servant of thy handmaid?" The servant of God answered, " Dost thou not know that I cast aside the world which thou servest, and that whosoever abandons a thing has power over it? Truly I have forsaken it and its pleasures, whereas thou servest it and its pleasures. Hence thou art indeed its servant." The king, recognizing that he was a wise man, commanded his retinue to bestow upon him gold and silver. The sage, however, rejoined that if the king had something that he was unable to buy he would not esteem it
lightly. So the king said unto him, "I shall give thee delicious viands." To which the sage responded, "Wherein is the king's means of satisfying himself superior to those of his subjects? He relieves nothing but his hunger." Then the king added, "I will adorn thee with the most beautiful garments." To this sage also rejoined, "Would that thou couldst adorn the wise with wisdom, good works, abstinence from wordly things, and the fear of God in private and in public." At this remark the king wept and rode away.

The prophets of blessed memory say, " Thus saith the Lord God, 'Behold My servant eateth but ye hunger.'" \({ }^{1}\) The sages of blessed memory say, "Whosoever freeth himself from the yoke of the Torah must bear the yoke of the government and the yoke of worldly care." \({ }^{2}\) Grace is vouchsafed unto the man who serves God becomingly, who sincerely aspires to perfect repentance and hopes for what is in the Hand of God; for it is written, "O the happiness of all who hope in Him." \({ }^{3}\)

Know my brother,-may God help us both to His favor!that daily sustenance is of two kinds: that of this world and that of the world to come. By the susteriance of this world is meant a sufficiency of food for the satisfying of man's hunger and raiment to cover his nakedness and that of his child. These are prime necessities. God has appointed the food for all flesh from the great unto the small, as it is written, "He giveth food to the cattle;" " "He giveth food to all flesh;" \({ }^{5}\) "Thou openest Thy Hand and satisfiest all living with favor." \({ }^{\text {G }}\) And He-blessed be His Name!-provideth food for the world, "from the horns of the reëm to the eggs of the nests." The future world is for those considered worthy of it by reason of their exalted knowledge and pious works coupled with God's favor, mercy, leniency and beneficence. In return for all this grace God desires the service of the pious.

The learned differ widely in explaining God's dispensations in this world: its ample sustenance, the pleasant things of its possessors, the prosperity of infidels and transgressors among the sons of man, and the feebleness of the pious and of the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Is. LXVI, r.3. \({ }^{2}\) Pirke Aboth III, 6. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. II, 12. \({ }^{*}\) Ps. CXLVII, r
\({ }^{8}\) Ps. CXXXVI, 25. \({ }^{\circ}\) Ps. CXLV', 16.
}
learned with their misery, trials, tribulations, pain, illnesses, and their many mishaps in this world. Some there are who say that God favors the infidel in this world to recompense him for whatever good he may have done, and gives him so much pleasure in this world that he has no portion in the world to come. The pious man suffers in this world for whatever wrong he has perpetrated, and then God translates him to the Dwelling of Life. Having already been sorely tried in this world he is not liable to the full measure of punishment in the Future World. This aspect of the prosperity of the wicked is mirrored in the Scriptural passage, "Those that hate Him He repayeth to their face, to destroy them." \({ }^{1}\) The affliction of the righteous shows that God compassionates them even as a man compassionates his child when he rears him well despite the child's reluctance, for it is written, " And thou shalt know in thy heart that just as a man chasteneth his son so the Lord thy God chasteneth thee." \({ }^{2}\) They should not suffer themselves to be depressed because of God's discipline: "My son, despise not the reproof of the Lord; and abhor not His rebuke : for whomsoever the Lord loveth He chasteneth even as a father that delights in his son;" \({ }^{3}\) "I visited their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with plagues." *

Some of the learned say that God prospers the worthless in this world to test the heart of the pious man. Will he cling to his piety in the consciousness that what God has treasured up for him is more permanent, more exalted and more enduring than all such prosperity? Will he refrain from envying the wicked when he sees them in possession of wealth and power, and his own condition just the reverse of that? When he abides in his piety, having full confidence in his Master, and thereby increasing his faith through contentment with his lot, he becomes worthy of copious reward and great happiness. If he indulges in the pleasures of this world after the manner of the wicked and is ignorant of wisdom, God bestows upon him the measure of his reward, but he falls beneath the grade of the pious.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. VII, 10. \({ }^{2}\) Deut. VIII, 5. \({ }^{0}\) Prov. III, II and 12
\({ }^{4}\) Ps LXXXIX, 33.
}

Again, there are those who say that the wicked man's prosperity in this world is one of God's tests to ascertain whether he will repent, act righteously, and through this prosperity he will execute the obligations towards God and towards the weak. Often, however, he does not act accordingly but makes the prosperity vouchsafed unto him by God the occasion of rebellion, relying upon this prosperity as an instrument of rebellion, and grows more and more wicked and perverse. His punishment is very severe. For such actions God upbraids the wicked, as it is written, "Thou didst multiply silver unto them and they made their gold into Baal;" " I satisfied them and they committed adultery." \({ }^{2}\) For these offenses He punished them most severely.

Some there are who say that God vouchsafes prosperity to the worthless often for the purpose of bestowing it upon the pious child whom God brings forth from him. When he accumulates wealth He intends it for his pious child. They find the proof of this in the passage, "The wicked prepares but the righteous dons it." \({ }^{4}\) In case he has no child his possessions very often go to someone else worthy of them or to the weak, as it is said, "He will gather it for him that pitieth the poor." * Wealth may be granted him in order to intensify the misfortune wherewith God wreaks vengeance upon him in this world, for it is written," Richesare preserved unto theirowner to his hurt." \({ }^{5}\)

Some of the learned hold that the happiness of this world's people has its foundation wholly in astrological conditions depending upon the spheres, the stars and the heavens in general. \({ }^{6}\) These celestial agencies decree that the one born into this world in the horoscope of the happy, shall be happy; the one born in the horoscope of sobbing, shall sob; and so on for the other natal decrees of the stars. But since the activity

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Hosea II, io. \({ }^{2}\) Jer. V, 7. \({ }^{\text {T Job. XXVII, 17. "Prov. XXVIII, } 8 .}\)
- Eccl. V, 13.
- The "learned" mentioned in this passage are the Ihwan as-Safa whose system of astrology is set forth in the Propacdeutik, pp. 63-85. The Mediaeval Jews entertained a diversity of views regarding astrology. Abraham-Tln-Ezra, like Nathanel, was a firm believer; Abraham-ibn-David and Ychudah Hallewi were conciliatory : Maimonides was bitterly opposed to the so-called science. Cf. Zunz's Gesammelte Schriften, (Vol. III, pp. 93 and 95), and S. Sachs' Hajonah, (Vol. I, pp. 59 and 93).
}
of the stars is limited to what their Creator has intrusted to them, and they do not rebel against Him nor overstep His injunctions and prohibitions, it follows that this activity originates not with themselves but with God. For He sends them forth in His wisdom, directs them according to His will, and instructed them at the time of their creation. Every work issues from them but originated with Him and unto Him is its return." \({ }^{1}\) They are the mediators between Him and His creation, just as trusted ministers are between the king and his subjects. Whatever reward or punishment is meted out to any of the king's subjects emanates from the king not from the ministers. The king is too exalted to attend to many matters directly: to execute murderers, cut off the hands \({ }^{2}\) and feet of robbers, lash those that come under the penal laws, and perform such other acts as may be necessary in the punishment of malefactors. The same can be said in regard to the dispensing of provisions and stipends among the kindred of the king, his troops and his people. The king himself is too exalted to manage such matters himself but puts them into the hands of his viziers, dignitaries, servants, and other deputies, each one doing that for which he is best adapted. In this wise, God intended that all His acts should be through the acts of the celestial bodies. Since human kings, whose dominions are earthly, limited and without permanence, and were they to take it into their own hands to reward or punish anyone, it would not \({ }^{3}\) harm them in the least and, still they keep themselves aloof and are too proud to directly mingle with the world, the more reason, that the King of Kings, the most exalted, unto whom the highest comparison would be fitting were he not too exalted and too lofty to have anything compared to Him or to His Essence which is too sacred, should be too exalted and too glorious to look after the daily sustenance of any individual creature or attend to any such matters. His wisdom makes it necessary to put this into the hands of deputies whom he has singled out and made the inhabitants of the heavenly \({ }^{4}\) vaults

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Kuranic. . Sura V, 42. \({ }^{3}\) There can be no doubt that the particule \(\left.\boldsymbol{*}\right\}\) in the Arabic text was omitted by the negligent copyist.
- Naturanschauung, p. 137.
}
to declare His praise unto all eternity, to serve him properly, and, without deceiving or disobeying their Creator, to dispense such gifts, daily sustenance, riches and felicity as He has bestowed upon them for His creatures. \({ }^{1}\) Thanksgiving and service are due Him, not them, since He is the Creator and Sustainer of all things and bestows on them happiness and innumerable blessings.

Since that is clear the prosperity of the infidel in this world and the misery of the believer are mysteries strange and subtle, unfathomed by any but God and those upon whom He bestowed the science thereof, viz., His prophets, saints, and pious men, and the God-fearing philosophers who inherited their knowledge from them. Truly all the aspects of the subject treated by the learned are admirable. Were it not for fear of divulging a secret which has been confided to us on this subject by one who is more learned than we are, we would reveal of it more. Ask it, my brother, of those versed therein that thou mayest understand it-please God! Likewise in the matter of predestination and Divine Providence we find man constrained in regard to his creation, his sustenance and the duration of his life in this mundane dwelling. The pen has become dry on that subject.

As for obeying and disobeying the Creator and the free choice \({ }^{2}\) of God's guidance, we point out that when a man chooses to do good God aids him, granting him a means of attaining his object and helping him to it, as it is written, "See I have placed before thee this day, life and good," \({ }^{3}\) and it is further written, "Thou shalt choose life." \({ }^{4}\) For God recoils at the thought that when a man knocks at the gate it must be locked in his face and mercy withheld. Similarly, when a man chooses to do what is wrong and sinful-preferring to disobey rather than to obey God-God grants him a delay and leaves him; for He is too exalted, tro lofty and too noble to repudiate anyone before His gate so that he flee from it.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Propacdeutik. p. 74.
\({ }^{2}\) For the Mediaeval Jewish Thinkers' solution of the problem of the freedom of the will consult Knollen's Problem der Willensfreiheit in der juidischen Religionsphilosophic. \({ }^{3}\) Deut. XXX, 15. \({ }^{\text {A }}\) Idem 19.
}

But since the man has chosen disobedience in preference to obedience, God deals with him rigorously and compels him to submit. For man is constrained with respect to his creation, his daily sustenance and the length of his life in this mundane dwelling. Nothing is bestowed upon him except what God has predestined for him. The pen has become dry on that subject, according to the Scriptural verse, "What was shall be, and what has been made shall be made, and there is nothing new under the sun." \({ }^{1}\)

Thus all the predictions of the astrologers and their warnings against certain things are due to predestination by God that they exist-and the astrologers are not able to advance their advent before their time by a moment or delay it for a moment. All that is in accordance with what the Creator has arranged for His transient creatures through righteousness from which He does not swerve, as it is written, "The Rock, His work is perfect, for all His ways are just." \({ }^{2}\) And furthermore, "For God is the judge : this one He casts down and that one He elevates." \({ }^{3}\) "He puts to death and bringeth to life, He maketh wealthy and reduceth to poverty," whom He wishes and how He wishes, as it is written, "I put to death and bring, to life, I wound and I heal;" " The Lord putteth to death and restoreth to life;" \({ }^{5}\) "The Lord maketh poor and maketh rich;" \({ }^{6}\) "He raiseth up the poor from the dust." \({ }^{7}\) A man becomes ill and is at the point of death-those around about him despair of his recovery-when lo God decrees him life among the living: the visitors die first. Similarly, the game is chased and gets caught in the trap, but God decrees its escape: the hunter dies first. An Arabian poet says, "Oft the man that's ill will live though hope hath vanished: someone that visits him is stricken and dieth first. The grouse is caught and escapes sound though just about to perish: the first to die is the hunter." Often man comes within a thread's breadth of the reservoirs of death but escapes through the decree of God: "He brought me up out of a horrible pit, out

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Eccl. I, 9. \({ }^{2}\) Deut. XXXII, 4. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. LXXV, 8. \({ }^{4}\) Deut. XXXII, 39. \({ }^{6}\) Sam. II, \({ }^{6}\) Idem, 7. \({ }^{7}\) Idem, 8.
}
of the miry clay, and placed my foot upon the rock." " There are many such passages. An Arabian poet says, "How oft the vast fields are too narrow for its inmates? And sometimes it is possible to find an exit from amid lances." At times a man acquires something only to have it become the property of another, as it is written, "He prepares but the righteous dons it." \({ }^{2}\) It not unfrequently happens that the hunter catches game and some one else seizes it just as the Arabian poet holds, "O the favor of God! He gives sustenance through His power: this one catches the fish and that one eats them." Likewise God in creating, made this one blind and that one weak, this one sound and that one unsound. And as regards length of life, this one lives long and that one but for a brief space. The latter is cut off while living in ease and plenty in the best, most joyous time of life. He is in that choicest period-youth, when death snatches him away.

All things, O brother, occur through the righteousness of God. It is the supposition of the astrologers that this is the work of the stars and of the spheres, whereas, my brother, they are controlled and constrained by the command of their Creator. They do not set themselves in opposition to His commands and perform only that which He has intrusted to them. Truly their works emanate from the Praised One, not from themselves. The poet says concerning them: "If thou didst indeed hold that the stars injure and benefit what is beneath them, be not surprised if some one remarks, 'Behold thou hast made them associates of God.' " Everything that thou seest in this world, my brother, be it life or death, poverty or riches, health or sickness, is what God has decreed as the inevitable portion of His creatures. This all occurs in justice, for in Him there is no injustice. Truly these matters are subtle secrets and sublime realities open only to God and to those upon whom He has bestowed the science thereof: the prophets. His saints and the heirs to their knowledge. May God in His mercy assist us both to good works and the attainment of the most exalted degree in both Dwellings! May the Praised One prepare for His servant an easy path to the other world-the noblest Man-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{8}\) Ps. XLIII. \({ }^{2}\) Job. XXV, 17.
}
sion, the highest degree,-offering perpetual sustenance and everlasting gifts never requested back and in no wise disappearing. There thou art not translated from one condition to another as in this world, wherein God has pre-ordained the daily sustenance and the duration of life for His creatures. Were these creatures eternal, verily their daily sustenance and the bounties He bestows would likewise last eternally. The Praised One is indeed the Creator of all and their Sustainer: He puts them to death and calls them to life again. I have confidence in Him and intrust my affairs to Him-the forgiving and merciful One.

And likewise, my brother, we must carefully consider all His created things and ponder over their subtleness and their exaltedness, their minuteness and their magnitude. Behold His wisdom is clear to those who consider it; it is neither hidden nor veiled from them.

This wisdom is shown in the minerals. He called into existence different kinds of substances: ranging from colored rubies to gold, silver, iron, copper and tin; from quicksilver to lead; and from bitumen to pitch, salt, hard wood and what is similar to these,-whose nature and whose number are comprehended by God alone.

Similarly, His wisdom is shown in plants with their different species, forms, leaves, flowers, fruits, colors, odors and their different purposes-useful and the contrary, for poison and for treacle-from the great cedar to the smail dry grass which cleaves to the surface of the earth: whose nature, whose number and the multitude of whose species are comprehended by God alone.

Likewise, the wisdom of God is shown in the animals with the different combinations of their members, their structures, their families, their nature, their aliments and their uses; their species-terrestial, aquatic, aerial and ignitic-according to their different forms, appearances, genera and species which cannot be counted or comprehended save by their Creator and Originator, sanctified be His Names!

Similarly, His eminent wisdom is conspicuous in the sons of man with their varying forms, constitution, nature, composi-
tion, colors and appearance in the castern and western parts of the earth, whose whole number and multitude cannot be estimated or comprehended save by the Creator of created things, their Former and Originator, Governor, Nourisher and Sup-porter-God, the Most High, the Omnipotent.

And similarly, my brother, consider the glory of man's power and how God has bestowed upon him intellect, wisdom, understanding, knowledge, magnificent conceptions and other excellencies through which God has differentiated him from other animals and made him the one who commands, forbids, rewards, and punishes, and subdues the desires which overcome the brute. All this is not the case with the brutes.

He is adorned with temperance and shines with chastity, ponders over the religious sciences concerning the proper service due His Creator, His true unity and His complete transcendence above all earthly affections, deports himself according to God's positive and negative commandments, observes the laws and thereby becomes worthy of great reward and permanent happiness,-which is not the case with the brutes.

God has moreover given him knowledge of other sciences: the horoscopes of the stars, their omens, decrees, and portents of things before they occur. Hence He measured the form of the sphere and its spaces most minutely, and found it possible to make a handy reproduction of the constellations with their locations and of the stars according to their kinds-the planets and the fixed stars-divided off according to their courses. By means of it he knows the truth about obscure matters, happiness, the seasons and the horoscopes of the stars,-as though the knowledge of it were in man's soul at the time of his birth, -decrees, events before their occurrence, eclipses, the ending of kingdoms, the succession of dynasties, the impendence of wars and seditions, famine and plenty, and the various other decrees of the stars according to the passing of time and seasons, which is not the case with the brutes.

Likewise, God has imparted to him other sciences, e. g., the science of medicine involving the method of preparing different kinds of remedies from various drugs composed of mineral, vegetable and animal matter, for the purpose of healing
the body and putting an end to sickness, and that animal and man might therewith expell from the bodies of men and animals the excess of food; besides what he employs in the amputation of limbs, the healing of wounds, the mixing of different salves, the removal of cataracts from the eyes, the coloring of the eyelids and eyebrows with collyrium, and other procedures of the physicians and the surgeons,-which is not the case with the brutes.

And likewise God imparted to him various arts: the science of geometry to build houses out of hewn rocks and beaten tiles; the painting of all kinds of pictures in the temples with oils and pigments; the gilding and depicting of forms and figures; the laying out of gardens with every variety of plants; the conjunction of two species that there might arise from them something different from either of them whether it be plant or animal; the method of conducting water in aqueducts; the devising of wonderful waterwheels for irrigation; \({ }^{1}\) the different kinds of machines; water mills; hot baths and the like. Besides he has been granted the knowledge how to build strong ships with cunning tools in the firmest manner. With these ships he cleaves the crest of the sea and carries out his purpose with the aid of his Creator who guides him with the shining stars. His journey depends upon favorable winds and the calmness of the sea. He carries wares to every land without paying tribute to the sea. Likewise he carries wares from these lands to other lands. He plunges into the sea to extract therefrom the precious pearl, \({ }^{2}\) the red coral, etc. He manufactures the net and snare to catch fish small and great, to derive benefit thereby and to be fed therefrom in divers manners and ways. And likewise there is the great benefit he derives from mining quicksilver, gold, silver, copper, iron, lead, rubies and all the different kinds of precious stones, and the smelting of glass from sand and tinting it with different colors and figures. He sets gins to catch ferocious beasts, venison and

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, pp. 12 and. Arabic text, pp. 194-198. For a description of the dawalib or irrigation water-wheels, consult Lane's Dictionary under the word, Lane's Manners and Customs II, 26. and Wüstenfeld's Jacut V, 33.
\({ }^{2}\) Masudi's Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gems, p. 345.
}
fowl of the air. He crushes the fruit of trees to extract the essential oils and the like. Consider also what knowledge God has given him that he might evolve writing, the reading of books and the composition of verses, polite literature and commentaries, the cultivation of letter writing and eloquence, and the study of history according to years, geneologies, dynasties and the conjunctions of the planets. \({ }^{1}\) The brutes are far from the possession of all these noble qualities, not to mention the other excellencies which we have passed over but with which God has favored him above all other creatures. Furthermore, God endowed him with the inclination to fall in love that He might thereby multiply him and cause him to derive benefit in this world and in the world to come.

Similarly, consider the four elements-earth, water, air and fire-and that God in His resplendent wisdom sowed in them heat and cold, moisture and dryness, the parts being affected by their contiguity to one another, until there results what Cod in His resplendent and Divine wisdom ordained, which the creatures are too feeble to describe or to comprehent.

The same conclusion is reached when thou reflectest, my brother, upon the grandeur of the plan of the heavens and their constitution: how there are wandering and stationary stars; those which devastate and those which build, those which are auspicious and those which are ill-omened ; the two polar stars -the south and the north-and also the two knots which are the head and tail of the dragon, and the wisdom and power of the Creator which they indicate. \({ }^{2}\) The Praised One has

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Berachya has similar passages in his Hahibbur XXII.
\({ }^{2}\) Anthropologie, p. 49; Propaedeutik, pp. 50 and 69 . The two opposite points at which the sun crosses the constellations in the course of its advance and return are called the head and the tail of the dragon. These points are neither stars nor bodies but "two concealed things." The fact that the two knots (the head and the tail of the dragon) lie in the midst of the constellations was regarded as a special evidence of wisdom. It was taken to indicate that some of the things of this world are revealed to the senses, while the rest are concealed, occult and beyond the reach of the senses. Manifest and clear are the substance and accidents of hodies. Concealed and occult are the substance and the states of souls. Manifest are the things of this world. ITidden and almoct wholly veiled from the understanding are the things of the other world. God so ordered things that the manifest should open the way to the concealed and occult.
}
commanded us to lift up our eyes unto them and contemplate them, and consider His creation and its wonderful stability, that His grandeur might increase in our hearts and His majesty in our souls, as Holy Writ saith, "Lift up on high your eyes and see;" \({ }^{1}\) "Lift up to the heavens your eyes;" \({ }^{2}\) "The heavens declare the glory of God. . . Day unto day uttereth speech;" \({ }^{3}\) "For the sun he sets a tent among them. And he is like a bridegroom going forth from His chamber, \({ }^{4}\) etc. We shall treat this subject in part as a reminder of the grandeur of the All-wise Creator's work.

Know my brother,-may God strengthen both of us with His spirit!-that fundamental to all the spheres and to their structure are the seven stars and the twelve signs of the zodiac. The seven planets are: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, the Sun, Venus, Mercury and Moon. The twelve signs of the zodiac are: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Capricorn, Aquarius, and Pisces. \({ }^{5}\) They are the armies of God, the inhabitants of His heavens, His angels ever near Him, the mediators between Himself and His creatures, His vicegerents over all His creation, bestowing blessings, benefits and happiness upon those creatures for whom God has designated these things. \({ }^{6}\) Similarly they mete out pain, adversity, misery and punishment to the one for whom God has designated these things according to his deserts. To this the prophets refer when they say, "Which the Lord thy God hath divided into all the nations under the whole heavens." \({ }^{7}\) In reference to the descent of spiritual blessings and influences from the heavens they say, " The Lord will open for thee His goodly treasure; " \({ }^{8}\) "And it shall come to pass on that day, saith the Lord, that I shall answer the heavens and they shall answer the earth." \({ }^{\circ}\) There are many such passages. They are figurative expressions for the descent of blessings from the heavens upon mundane creatures. Likewise, afflictions descend from the heavens upon those deserving thereof. Thus the celestial bodies battled

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Is. XL, 26. \({ }^{2}\) Idem LI, 6. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. XIX, 2 and 3. \({ }^{4}\) Idem, 5 and 6.
\({ }^{5}\) Propaedeutik, pp. 46 and 47.
\({ }^{6}\) Naturanschaung, p. 144; Propacdeutik, p. 74. Compare Shabbath 156.
\({ }^{t}\) Deut. IV, 19. \({ }^{8}\) Idem XXVIII, 12. \({ }^{\circ}\) Hosea II, 23.
}
against Siserah,-the reference in the Scriptural passage being to the angels of the stars: "From the heavens the stars fought, from their orbits they fought against Siserah." \({ }^{1}\) And likewise, the following are some of the passages referring to the service and the everlasting praise which they render their Creator: "Praise ye the Lord from the heavens;" \({ }^{2}\) "Unto Thee the hosts of heaven bow down ;" " "Bless the Lord all His hosts." \({ }^{4}\)

Thus it is clear that all creation-fruits, plants and animals dumb and rational-utters His praises, as it is written, "All Thy works praise Thee." \({ }^{\text {s }}\) Similarly we read in Mizmor, "Praise ye the Lord from the heavens," \({ }^{6}\) this being the theme from the beginning until the end. If this then is the case with the world of nature-the world of genesis and decay-the more reason that these spheres and the stars which are the upper world-a world invisible, light of weight and corporeal, a world loftier and nobler than this world-the inhabitants of His heavens should praise Him contint:ally, not ceasing from His service for the twinkling of an eye or for even less than that; that they do not disobey His order, move only at His command, and pass not beyond the limits prescribed by Him. They fear Him, His seed is immanent in them, and their nature perforce depends upon Him. Just as the Exalted and Mighty has in this world of nature khalifs, prophets, administrators, saints and religious men, so it is in the world of the spheres, since it is in closer connection with the world of emanation and was formed before this world. It is clear that they are God's armies, the inhabitants of His celestial vaults, the vicegerents of His world and the appointed guardians of His pious ones. He ordered them to shine all the time by night and by day, and empowered them to convey blessings to the world beneath. To that the Scriptures refer in the passage, " And God said, 'Let the luminaries be in the firmanent of the heavens'; and He said, 'They shall be for signs, for seasons, for days and for years." " "And it is further stated, "The greater light to rule by day and the lesser by night, with the stars." \({ }^{8}\) They explain that, "to rule

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Judges V, 20. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXLVIII, 1 . \({ }^{\text {B }}\) Neh. IX, 6.
'Ps. CXLVIII, 2. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem CXLV', 10. \({ }^{\circ}\) Ps. CXLVIII, 1.
\({ }^{7}\) Gen. I,-14. \({ }^{5}\) Gen. I, 16.
}
by day" is absolute decree. Concerning their ripening grain and fruits it is said, "And from the choicest fruits of the sun and from the choicest sprouts of the months." \({ }^{1}\)

God also bestowed upon them a power through which all things in this world grow, especially is this the case with the sun and its heat; for the sun is the source of all the life in the world, whether it be mineral, plant or animal. From it comes the fire which is stored up in stone, tree, earth and water. The fruits ripen and the trees blossom, the rain pours down and the streams glide on by the decree of the Omnipotent One who sowed this fire in the sun and bestowed the same upon it. He set the sun in the midst of the heavens to be as the heart which endows the body with motion and life. Thus it sheds upon the stars above and upon all beneath that resplendent light bestowed upon it by its Creator and Originator-may He be exalted! In this way everything on earth received something from its overflow, each species according to its power be it mineral, plant or animal. These are some of the manifestations patent to the senses. As to those conceived by the faculty of reflection, they are too numerous to be mentioned in this book. Truly the sun does not transgress the boundaries set for it by the Creator and cannot bestow a gift upon anyone for whom He has not intended it, since the sun is but one of His servants, one of His vicegerents in this world. The prophets in their graphic descriptions used the sun figuratively to depict reward and punishment, whose science is veiled to the world. The doctrine of reward is briefly set forth by them in the words, "But unto you that fear My name shall the sun of righteousness arise with healing in its wings;" "The wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmanent and they that turn many to righteousness as the stars forever and ever." \({ }^{3}\) They also referred to punishment under the figures of burning ravs, the simoon and the plague, as it is written, "For behold the day cometh burning like an oven when the presumptous and every worker of evil shall be as stubble and flame. And the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, leaving them neither root

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. XXXIII, 14. \({ }^{2}\) Mal. III. 20. \({ }^{3}\) Dan. XII, 3.
}
nor branch;" \({ }^{1}\) "They shall be burnt with hunger and devoured with burning heat." \({ }^{2}\)

Similarly the other stars have spiritual, subtle creatures who journey in this world with the consent of their Creator and Governor. What he assigned to each and every creature they bestow at times prescribed, and at the fixed time of birth, which He alone,-magnified be His praise!-determines. In fact, all of them collectively cannot act contrary to His command or prohibition and can do nothing else than that which He has decreed and has empowered them. Thus the moon cannot control the heat of the sun, its nature and its function. Similarly, the sun has no control over the cold of the moon, its nature and its function. The same holds good for all the other stars. The Creator has moreover ordained for each and every one a distinct orbit to be traversed in a designated period as long as the world lasts. Thus God determined the orbit of the moon, the planet nearest to the earth, by causing the moon's sphere to complete its revolution in a month. Saturn, the remotest planet, completes its orbit in thirty years. The sun, which is becween the two, finishes its orbit in a year. The movements of the other stars are likewise determined in accord with God's decree and will.

No one is associated with Him in His world and no one questions His acts, as it is written, "Who shall say unto Him, 'What doest Thou?'" \({ }^{3}\) The world indeed bears testimony to His wisdom, to the obedience rendered to His decrees, and to the fact that we receive manifold blessings. By observing the motions of the heavenly bodies we have become aware of months, years and conjunctions to the extent reached by our science and attained with our understanding. Of course the things which are hidden from us are much more than those we know. Praised be the One whose creation is this creation, whose might is this might! All are too feeble to attain a thorough knowledge of Him, just as one of the learned says, "When the imagination is concerned with the climbing up the ladder of His greatness, the way of the righteous is to aknow-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Mal. III, 19. \({ }^{2}\) Deut. XXXII, 24. \({ }^{8}\) Ecel. VIII. 4.
}
ledge his weakness concerning what is under him and behind him. All are bent upon His praise and from the refulgence of His light they receive light."

It thus came about, my brother, that the ancient nations were misled by the acts of the stars and the influence they exert, and as a consequence worshiped them and offered them incense. They were unaware that the stars did not voluntarily grant them happiness and that they bestowed only what God destined for His creatures at their hands. In many Scriptural passages God has forbidden us to worship the stars. We need not enter further into the explanation of this subject, as it is well understood. Our fathers of old transgressed by making the image of Saturn, worshiping it and carrying its effigy in procession, after having learned that he was appointed to regulate their affairs; for every nation has a director whom the Creator has appointed to regulate its affairs, \({ }^{1}\) as he is called figuratively by the prophets: "The prince of the kingdom of Greece, the prince of the kingdom of Persia;" 2 "The great prince who presideth over the children of Thy people." \({ }^{3}\) They spoke figuratively of the angels who are the spirits of the planets and who move them through their journey in accord with the command of their Creator. We know that the people used to carry that effigy about them since the prophet upbraids them with the words, "And ye bear the Kaiwan " \({ }^{*}\) of your idols and the star of your gods. The name of Saturn in Greek is Kaiwan. \({ }^{5}\) How very wonderful, my brother, is the course which God makes it take, from the west to the east, whereas the sphere of the constellations would force it from the east to the west. That is clear when the sun or the moon is at the end of the sign Aries and towards Taurus. And Aries

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) In Bereshith Rabbah (parashah 78, sect. 3) we are told that the being that wrested with Jacob was the tutelar angel of Esaw. According to Sh'moth Rabbah (parashah 32, sect. 7) if a man performs one good deed God gives him one angel to guard him; if two, two angels; and if many, a half a camp of angels.
\({ }^{2}\) Dan. X, 20. \({ }^{8}\) Idem XII, I.
- The Massoretic reading is Kiyun, but Nathanel like Ibn Ezra, prefers the reading Kaivan which in Syriac and Assyrian means "Saturn."
\({ }^{5}\) The Greek name for Saturn is not Kaivan but Chronos.
}
sets-a journey perceptible to the eye and the senses-from the setting sign to the sign which has not yet gone down. It is clear that its course is from west to east, whereas the course of the stars is the opposite, from east to west. They compare it to a watermill which turns to the right while the cable above it turns to the left, each of these preserving its own course. Praised be the One who directs it and causes it to journey. He creates a thing and its opposite as a proof of His own unity and that there is not associated with Him a being like unto Him or of an opposite nature. It is thus clear that they do not spontaneously favor anyone and do not ward off harm except with the permission and through the decree of their Creator. They render obedience unto Him, submit to His commands, sanctify Him, and praise Him. All of them stand ready to obey His beck and call, worshiping Him and reverently bowing down before Him.

The learned point to many of the sevens and the twelves in this world, corresponding to the celestial bodies.

Man, who is a microcosm, has seven senses and twelve apertures, as we have explained in the second chapter of this book;

In time, there are seven days, twelve hours in the night and twelve months to the year;

The whole number of prayers in the Tefillah \({ }^{1}\) is eighteen, not including the first prayer which is the principal one;

The Torah commences with seven words and ends with twelve: "Bereshith bara Elohim eth hashamayim we-eth haarez;" \({ }^{2}\) "Ulekol hayyad hahhazakah ulekol hammorah haggadol asher asah Mosheh le'ene kol Yisrael; " \({ }^{3}\)

When taking out the Torah and returning it to the ark we read seven and twelve sections: the first set begins "Wayehi binso'a ha'aron," and the second "Ubenuhah yomar, shubah; "*

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) B'rachoth.
\({ }^{2}\) Gen. I, I: "In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth."
\({ }^{\text { }}\) Deut. XXXIV, 12: "And in all that mighty hand, and in all the great terror which Moses showed in the sight of all Israel."
"Numbers X, 35 and 36 : "And it came to pass when the ark set forward that Moses said, 'Rise up, O Lord. and Thine enemies shall be scattered, and they that hate Thee shall flee before Thee.' And when it rested. he said, 'Return, O Lord, unto the ten thousands of the thousands of Israel.' "
}

The first two verses of the poem of the illustrious and princely Moses al-Kalim consist of seven and twelve words respectively: "Haazinu hashshamayyim waadabberah wethishma haarez imre fi;" "Ya'arof kammatar likhi, tizzal kattal imrathi, kiseirim 'aley deshe wekirebibim ale eseb;" \({ }^{1}\)

The sentence beginning "wezoth haberaka" has twelve words and that beginning "Torah ziwwah" has seven; \({ }^{2}\)

The precious stones as arranged upon the breast of the High Priest were twelve in number and of twelve colors, the names of the twelve tribes being engraved upon them. The garments which he put on-which God commanded him to make according to the passage, " And these are the garments which they shall make"'-consisted of "hoshen we'efod ume'il wekutoneth tashbez miznefeth we'abnet; " \({ }^{3}\)

The number of days of the appointed seasons are nineteen: Sabbath, Rosh Hashana, Yom Kippur, the eight days of the Tabernacles, the seven days of Passover, and the Day of the First Fruits;

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob occur in the Torah to that number in well known passages;

Prayer has nineteen designations: tephila, tehinna, rinah, arishah, gishah, derishah, bakkashah, rechishah, pegiah, keriah, sihah, 'amidah, zeakah, amirah, keriah, hishtawaya, shuah, widduy, perisha-that is their number; \({ }^{4}\)

When Holy Writ says, "He placed the boundaries of the nations according to the number of the children of Israel" : it means the twelve tribes, the four ancestresses and the three patriarchs;

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. XXXII, 1 and 2: "Give ear, O ye heavens, and I will speak; and hear, O earth, the words of my mouth. My doctrine shall drop as rain, my speech shall distil as dew, as the small rain upon the tender herb, and as the showers upon the grass."
\({ }^{2}\) Deut. XXXIII, I and 4: "This is the blessing wherewith Moses, the man of God, blessed the Children of Israel before his death." . . . . . "The Law which Moses commanded us is the heritage of the congregation of Israel."
\({ }^{3}\) Exodus XXVIII, 4: "A breast-plate an ephod, a tunic, a broidered coat, a mitre and a girdle."
- In Siphri (Vaethhannan, sect. 26) prayer is said to have ten designations.
\({ }^{5}\) Deut. XXXII, 8.
}

It is further noted in connection with the name of Eve (HaWaH) who was the mother of all living and from whom all flesh has issued, that its numerical value is nineteen. \({ }^{1}\)

Thus God ordered all things according to their number, and made it incumbent upon them to serve Him who is above them, since He is the Praised One, the King over all, mighty over all, the Creator of all, the Sustainer of all, the Governor of all. All testify to this, and therefore one of the pious while communing exclaimed, "All is Thine, and all is from Thee, all is in Thy power and all is Thy possession, all is the work of Thy hand, and all are Thy witnesses." There is no God save Him.

I serve Him, give thanks unto Him, have confidence in Him and commit unto Him my affairs, for He is beneficent and merciful.

We shall state what we can of the excellence of death that it may be retained in our memory since it is the gate of the Dwelling of Reward. \({ }^{2}\)

Know, O brother-may God help both of us through His Spirit!-that death is the soul's separation from the body, its cessation from the employment of the members of the body and of the senses. \({ }^{3}\)

Know, my brother, that death is of two kinds. There is the natural death of the body, that which is decreed upon all mortals : the pious and the wicked, the plebeian and the patrician, the prophet and the perverse, as it is written, "All things come alike to all: there is one event to the righteous and to the wicked ; to the good and to the bad, to the clean and to the unclean; to him that sacrificeth and to him that sacrificeth not; the good is as the sinner; and he that sweareth as he that feareth an oath." ' It has various advantages. We will mention as many of them as possible. The second death is that of the soul. It consists in ignorance of God and of His Law and failure to master it-let us take our flight to God from that. \({ }^{5}\) Such

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1} \mathrm{H}=8, \mathrm{~V}=6, \mathrm{H}=5\).
\({ }^{2}\) For the Mediacval Jewish exposition of immortality consult Templer, Die Unsterblichkeitslelire bei den jüdischen Philosophen des Mittelalters
\({ }^{3}\) Anthropologie, p. 123. 'Eccl. IX, 2. \({ }^{5}\) Sura LI, 50.
}
die in very truth. Even if their bodies are animated by the senses, their souls are dark with the darkness of death owing to accumulated ignorance. \({ }^{1}\) According to the sages the Scriptures allude to this matter: "The wicked are dead in life, for it is written, 'As I live, saith the Lord, I do not desire the death of the wicked.' \({ }^{2}\) And it is further written, 'The dead do not praise the Eternal. \({ }^{33}\) The Scriptures mean the wicked who are called dead while yet alive and are considered as cattle, for it is written, 'Nevertheless man being in honor abideth not: he is like the beast that perisheth.' " \({ }^{4}\) An Arabian poet said concerning that and ignorance, " Before death the ignorant is dead to his people: before burial his body is buried. He ordained that a man who does not live with knowledge is dead, has no life before the resurrection. The righteous, on the other hand, are spoken of as living even in their death, for it is written, "But the soul of my lord shall be bound up in the bundle of life." \({ }^{5}\) He means the dwelling of the future world which is the dwelling of life eternal, as it is written, "I shall give thee places to walk among those that stand by." \({ }^{6}\) It is further said "He that walketh in the path of perfection shall serve me;" \({ }^{\text {i }}\) "Who shall sojourn in Thy tents? He that walketh in perfection and worketh in righteousness;"s "Who shall ascend into the Mount of the Lord and stand in His Holy place?" \({ }^{\circ}\) Thus for the pious death is like a marriage feast.

As for the excellence of death, my brother, behold it is one of the stages towards the mansion of the other world, and it is the occasion of translation from the dwelling of scantiness to the dwelling of bounteousness, from a dwelling of mortality to one of eternity. Were it not for death the prophet, the executors, the servants and the pious would have no means of entering the Garden, the Abode of Recompense; and the infidels and the wicked would not be consigned to Gehinnom, the Abode of Punishment. And were there no such thing as death the earth would not be large enough to accomodate its inhabitants and possessors. They would be literally so heaped upon one an-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, p. \(124 .{ }^{2}\) Ez. XXXII, 11. \({ }^{3}\) Ps. CXV, 37.
\({ }^{4}\) Ps. XLIX, 21 . \({ }^{5}\) I Sam. XV', 29. \({ }^{\circ}\) Zech. VII, 3.
\({ }^{\top}\) Ps. CI, 6. \({ }^{8}\) Ps. XV, I. \({ }^{\ominus}\) Ps. XXIV, 3.
}
other that the ancient generations would not be distinguishable from the ancient saints. The latter would not imitate the deeds of the former. Verily men would deny their Creator and would spurn his sovereignity. Hence it is clear that death has its source in Divine Wisdom, designed by the Creator for all His creatures, small and great, prophets and executors, infidels and believers.

Since it has been asked, "What is the reason of it and wherein consists the preeminence of the learned over the ignorant, the preeminence of the one who surpasses over the one who is surpassed?" we shall briefly explain that matter by means of a lucid parable, for a constant recurrence to the explanation of those noble secrets and subtle meanings is impossible in this book. According to this parable a king gives a banquet to the people of one of his provinces. They are made up of nobles, judges, men of eminence and plebeians. When they reach his city they enter the city gate all together. After they enter this gate the king's messenger conducts each individual to the residence which he is to occupy. Those considered worthy to be near the king are placed with those who are near him; and those who should be at some distance from him, are placed with those who are remote from him. Those holding the rank of emir are assigned to quarters according to their various relationships to the king. Likewise the vile among them, such as the executioners and the keepers of the cattle,-and in short the people of each and every grade-are assigned to the grades for which they are most fit. Each and every one of the banqueters is inseparable from his class, and the sons of his grade. This, my brother, is the similitude of this world's people. When death loosens their bonds they are translated from this world according to the merit of each individual with the sons of his class and the people of his grade: the good go to the good, and wicked to the wicked. The Scriptures refer thereto in the passage, "But the soul of my lord shall be bound in the bundle of life " \({ }^{1}\)-it means the living who implore their Lord and do not die. And it is-further written, "The soul of thine enemies shall he sling out as out of the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) I Sam. XXV, 29.
}
middle of a string." \({ }^{1}\) He means the wicked, those who are punished in life : they cannot go up to the righteous and be of their assemblage, nor can they return to this world and do righteously. The prophets have commanded us to hate the one class and to love the other. As for hating we read, " Be hold those that hate thee, O Lord, do I hate." \({ }^{2}\) The sages say, "Warm thyself at the fire of the wise, but beware of their burning coals lest thou be burnt; for their bite is the bite of the fox, their sting the scorpion's sting, their hiss is the serpent's hiss, and all their words are like coals of fire." \({ }^{3}\) In fine, the sages go so far as to say, " The world is visited with good only for their sake, and with evil only for their sake." Let us betake ourselves, my brother, to the good and its possessors, to the pious and the lovers of God, that we may imitate their deeds and conduct ourselves according to their habits, that we may be of their assembly and join in their psalms. May God cause both of us to reach that most excellent degree and bestow upon us complete happiness through His grace, munificence and benevolence.

In the chapter dealing with religious devotion we have already had several narratives dealing with admirable deeds and people humble before God. We shall mention two additional stories about virtuous men.

One of these tales is about a man who was traveling along the seashore where some divers had brought up a quantity of pearls. He urgently begged them to let him have some for his children. Although they could have easily complied they refused. While they were talking highwaymen came out upon them. The divers, seeing the robbers from afar, swallowed all the pearls they had. When the robbers got to the spot they demanded that the pearls be handed over. The divers denying they had any, the robbers determined to split their abdomens open for the pearls and take what they would find. When the traveler saw that the abdomens of the divers were to be split open and that the pearls would be found in them, he had his own split open for their sake. Unbeknown to the robbers he

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Sam. XXV, 29. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXXXIX, 21. \({ }^{3}\) Pirke Aboth, ch. II, 15.
}
said to the divers, "Come now, I shall serve you and free you with my life. When you are brought before the robbers pray them not to kill you all at one time but cast lots for one of you and open his body. If they find anything in him they should then split open the abdomens of the others; and if not, then let the rest go free. If they grant you this favor you may bring forth the lot upon me. When they split my abdomen open they will not find any pearls in it and will set you free." So they did that. The robbers split open the abdomen of the traveler and set the others free. Reflect, my brother, upon the generosity of this man, the nobility of his deed, and the liberality of his soul towards those who were unworthy of all this at his hands.

It is also narrated that a pious man met a friend another pious man, after a long space of time, and enquired, "How are you and how do you get along with the people of your tribe?" He answered, "As for my condition, as thou seest, I make peace between the four enemies who are in my ribs. If one of them were aroused against me he would bring about my death. So I always appease them by keeping aright my constitution, and by giving them good nourishment in order to be secure from their evil. When the condition is satisfactory, I have to deal with the blows coming from the nourishment: If I am satisfied I have indigestion, and if I am hungry I experience pain. After I have evened matters up I am put to the trouble of relieving myself, and after that must wash and purify myself. Besides I suffer from the changes of the seasons-first excessive heat and then extreme coldand time's misfortunes which are not afar by night or by day, its illnesses, and the way it continually shifts its creatures from one condition to another so that they do not remain in any one state. To this I must add what I suffer from people who are insolent, envious, slanderous, lying, wicked and depraved, who if they hear good they hide it; and if they hear evil they publish it; and in case they do not hear anything, they invent lies. Circumstances have imposed their society and their intimacy upon me without any choice on my part. My relations with them are well indicated by the sentiment of the poet, 'It is the
irony of fate that a man should find an enemy in him whom he first befriended.' If I do good unto them they repay me with evil; and if they do not receive any good thing from me they wish me well. Keeping them in repair reminds me of worn out clothes: when those are patched up in one place another is damaged. The poet says concerning that, 'Time imposed upon me the society of such in whom I sce all the signs of bastardy; all of them repay me evil for good. Whenever I try to better them it does not help me; it is a worn out garment; here am I mending it all the time, sewing it with a fine needle but it becomes frayed. When one side is mended the other side becomes frayed. This, then, is my condition.
"As for the way I get along with the people of my tribe, I have intercourse with them in sincerity, equity and probity. I do well unto those that act well by me, and cherish those that cherish me. I repay those who do good, with good; and the evil-doers, with evil. I love the good and bless them; I am wroth with the wicked and curse them. This then is my manner of acting towards the people of my tribe. Now tell me how you are and how you get along with the people of your tribe."

The other servant of God replied, "My condition and my body are in every respect like yours. But the way I conduct myself towards the people of my tribe is of another description. As far as I can I make them desire me, but do not require any services of them in the manner that I serve them. On the contrary, I do well to the one who thrusts me aside and pardon the one who injures me. If anyone abuses or slanders me, I bear with him. If his statements are false, I am not at fault ; if his statements are true, he is not at fault. After I gain peace from them-from their insolence, envy and evil-I keep afar from their lesser warfare \({ }^{1}\) and betake myself to the war against my sensual soul with its nature and its yearnings, wishes, desires, corrupt views, its embelishment of falsehoods so as to give them the appearance of truth, and the subterfuges with

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) According to Sufi writers there are two jihads: al-jihadu ' 1 -akbar or "the greater warfare," which is against one's own lust ; and al-jihadu 'l-asghar "the lesser warfare," against infidels. Cf. Hughes, Dictionary of Islam, p. 243.
}
which it wishes to submerge me. For instance, it desires various kinds of food, and were I to obey it, I would become a captive slave, and my stomach would become the grave of lusts and the cemetery of sensual desires. If I find one day the food to which I am accustomed by a licit way, I would get it ; and if not, I would use all sorts of strategy to obtain it by an illicit way, which would cause me to incur penalties and ignominy, and to be dishonored before God and before men for the perfidy, theft, robbery, rage, deception, fraud, and similar gifts bestowed upon man by his lusts and to which he becomes a slave. Similarly if I obey them by desiring copulation, there is visited upon me all that the Creator wrote unequivocally concerning the punishment of harlotry, according to its different grades, (the explanation of which is extensive). When I try to repel its desire with arguments based on the continence prescribed by the law and with arguments derived independently by the intellect, and try to implore it to incline towards contentment and its exercise warning it of the punishment that is meted out to one who gratifies his passions, it evades me and disputes me. Then I set about to convince it of the existence of the Creator. I furnish it with the proof that the whole world, in its heights and in its depths, did not create itself but that someone else created it, brought it into existence from non-existence and subdues it with death, makes rich whom He wishes and makes abject whom He wishes. For had mundane beings created themselves they would have made choice of eternity and wealth, and would create things for themselves. Hence it was another being who created them, who grants them life and deprives them of it, who enriches and pauperizes, who deals with them as He wishes. But when I am victorious on this point, it tries to make me deny the authenticity of the prophets, i. e., that God did not communicate a revelation to man. I then bring rational arguments proving the existence of prophecy, with irrefutable and irrecusable proofs-as we shall mention in the chapter treating of the Messiah, the next chapter, please God-it abandones at the mere mention of these arguments all the current vanity, fallacy and fraud fall to the ground; but begins to confront me with
arguments to confute the doctrine of reward, punishment and the future life. It says to me, 'Beyond this world there is nothing. He that does good in it, does it in order to accomplish something by which he will be remembered after his death. Likewise with the commission of evil.' I handle this matter with arguments, rational and religious, urging the actuality of the other Dwelling and the belief in its reward and punishment, with arguments perfectly lucid and flawless,-as we shall briefly mention in the chapter dealing with the Future World, the last chapter of this book -and then it gives ear unto me and obeys my injunctions even as the big camel obeys the little boy. But then it begins to convince me that I am the noblest man of my time, the most lauded of my kindred, the most exalted son of my tribe. If I believe what it says and show my approval of it I incur the contrary : pride, neglect and arrogance; and if not, I escape folly, am accustomed to the truth and call myself the mighty conqueror of that from whose snares I have escaped. I seize hold of its bridle and retain a firm grasp upon it through the power of God, our Benefactor, our Supreme Champion. As for the pious, through them I increase my happiness. I pray God to gather me into their company. As for the wicked, I pray God to forgive and guide them. I never found an old man or a boy, irregardless of his piety or wickedness, but I believed him to be a more excellent servant of God than I." The other asked, "How is that?" He answered, "As for the venerable old man, truly he excels me, for he prayed before I was born, fasted and gave alms before I was created, had intimate intercourses with the good men who preceded me, and through experience acquired wisdom ere I did. Beyond a doubt he is the more excellent. As for the young boy, verily my sins and crimes are more numerous than his. When our records will be compared on the Day of Resurrection his balance will dip deeper than mine. Beyond a doubt he is the more excellent. As for the pious man, verily before God his piety and intentions are more excellent than mine, and his belief is loftier. As for the wicked and rebellious one, how can I prove that I am better than he, how can I convince myself of it? He disobeys God thoughtlessly, I do so deliberate-

1y. He is not aware of the serious consequences of his deeds; but I, on the other hand, am by no means in the dark in regard to such matters. So his excuse, my brother, is necessarily more acceptable in God's presence than mine." The second man showed himself worthier than the first, and the latter promised to walk in his path.

We are told that when Alexander died his body was placed in a casket, and that about the bier there were ten sages each of whom expressed a sentiment. The first said, "O thou wrathful judge, thy abode is with the needy and thy tomb with the quarrelsome. No kinsman helps thee, no vizier frees thee." The second said, "This is Alexander: the grandeur of his splendor shone even as the rays of the sun illuminates the flowers of the plants." The third said, "This is Alexander, the master of captives. To-day he finds himself a prisoner." The fourth said, "Behold how the dream of the sleeper has come to an end; and his sorrow, how it shows itself!" The fifth said, "This man was wont to ask what was before him but not what was behind him." The sixth said, "This body came to us speaking and leaves us mute." The seventh said, "This body was not safe when he possessed it." The eighth said, "We did not desire that from which thou hast parted and we disdained that uopn which thou gazest." The ninth said, "How remotely this resembles thy dwelling of yesterday!" And the tenth said, "This body had not as yet carried out his purpose with reference to the world when the world carried out its purpose with reference to him."

Another narrator says, "It came to pass that there were ten sages about Alexander's bier. The first said, 'We enter this world ignorant, remain in it thoughtless, and leave it unwillingly.' The second said, 'This is Alexander who surveyed over the wide world and left it in two cubits.' The third said, 'Thou usest to exhort us; but of all thy exhortations thy death is the greatest exhortation to us.' The fourth said, 'He owed his life to God but his death to himself.' The fifth said, 'Alexander never traveled without help and without instruments but this time.' The sixth said, 'This Alexander ruled over his subjects; now they rule over him.' The seventh said, 'Oft the timorous man hid from thee behind thy back; to-day he does not fear thee to
thy face.' The eighth said, 'Many a one anxious when thou wast dying that thou shouldst not die, to-day is anxious about thy speech that thou shouldst not speak.' The ninth said, 'How many did this man put to death in order that he should not die, and yet he died!' And the tenth, his treasurer, said, 'Thou didst command me never to be far from thee, but to-day I can not approach thee'."

They say that when a certain wise man had come forth from a great city some one asked him, "What hast thou found among the inhabitants of this great city?" He answered, "I saw illusive images and transitory accidents."

Reflect then, my brother, how very beautiful are piety and humility in God's presence, and confidence in Him to the end that He might make us of those who humble themselves before Him and who rely upon Him according to the word of His saint, "They that trust in the Lord shall be as Mount Zion which cannot be removed, but abideth forever." \({ }^{1}\)
The fifth chapter is finished with the help of God. There follows it

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. CXXV,
}

\section*{CHAPTER VI.}

This chapter treats of the virtues of the Messiah--may he speedily appear!-and salvation-may God in His mercy hasten it!

Know, my brother,-Gold help us both to attain His favor!that the Messiah's virtues are of noblest degree, and the knowledge thereof the most exalted science. \({ }^{1}\) That is why we wish to say something about his excellence and the virtues with which God endows him above and beyond the ancient prophets who have preceded him.

Know that we have spoken in the first chapter of the beneficence of God and His special favor to the Primal Intellect, how he created it perfect and complete with absolute certainty and with the clearest intelligence. It thus became the genus generum and the element of elements. It is intellect, intelligent and intelligible. Intellect, because it comprehended all the things bestowed upon it by its Creator, the Most Exalted; intelligent, because it understood its own essence and discarded from its Creator all the attributes belonging to it; and intelligible with regard to that which is beneath it in degree, viz., the Universal Soul which overflowed and emanated from it. Since it retains similarity and connection with the Universal Intellect it caused another emanation to overflow from the bounteousness acquired from the Intellect. This latter emanation was of a lower degree owing to the greater remoteness from the original source, the relation being that of the third to the first. And so on for the other gradations through which the thing passed to reach the sphere and after that the world of nature and what exists therein through the power of the Omnipresent and Omniscient One-minerals, plants, animals, and finally man the last creation. \({ }^{2}\)

The Creator's wisdom necessitated the release of the souls of

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) For the history of the development of the Messianic idea in Judaism consult Schwartz's Geschichte der Enteeckeliung der Messianischen Idee des Judenthums. \({ }^{2}\) Welitseele, pp. 24 and 26.
}
mortals from the injustice of this world of genesis and decay. Through the necessity of His wisdom-may His name be sanc-tified!-He mercifully vouchsafed unto mortals a revelation from the holy world-the world of the Universal Soul-which originated from the overflow of its holy cause, the Universal In-tellect-which in turn goes back to its Originator-may He be exalted! This emanation from the Universal Soul expressed itself in an individual man whose spirit is free from the impurity of the world of nature and is disciplined in the noblest sciences and the purest works. From that holy effluence descending upon him became an eloquent prophet. \({ }^{1}\) Revelation was vouchsafed unto him, coming unto him from the Creator. He prophesied concerning things before their existence, performed miracles, confounded the hinderers and rewarded the worthy. All that was intended to direct man and effect his deliverance from the world of genesis and decay. \({ }^{2}\) He who received that Divine Law from that prophet and acted accordingly and was directed by it, his soul was freed from the darkness of nature. But the man who failed to come up to the requirements of the Law and turned away from it, disobeyed that prophet and called him an imposter, darkened his own soul -from the misery of his condition may God in His mercy keep us afar!

This being the case, some souls of men escaped in the times of the prophets-peace be upon them!-and some remained; but God in His Goodness had promised through the mouth of the prophets to set up a noble person at the end of time to save the rest of the world and free them as He has saved in times bygone and in previous generations. Then his favor will be complete and his blessings scattered broadcast, the cause will be joined to its effect, just as the disciple is taught by his teacher. Then the wisdom concealed in the days of the ancient prophets will be revealed, the secret knowledge will come to light and the goodness of the Creator will embrace all the creation, great and small, female and male; likewise a universal peace will reign

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) For the Mediaeval Jewish explanation of prophecy consult Sandler's Das Problem der Prophetie in der jüdischen Religionsphilosophie von Saadial bis Maimuni. \({ }^{2}\) Cf. Attributenlchr?. p. 203, note 181.
}
among the creatures, and in their midst there will be no malevolence, envy, or wrong so that it will not be necessary to carry arms. This saviour (Messiah) will not smite the wicked with the sword, but will invoke God against them and they will vanish. He will judge through God's inspiration, will not need witnesses; only equity, justice, and God's own corroboration. His blessing will be visible throughout the world so that none of his time will lack knowledge of God, since the Omniscient One will endow them with unalloyed blessing, all-embracing felicity, and good successive and continuous. From the beginning of his time God will bestow revelation upon the small and upon the great. Happy the man that lives to see this!

Verily God has promised to revive the dead at the hand of the Messiah. They will see this and gaze upon it with their eyes. The eyes of the believers will be cool, but the eyes of those of the unbelievers will be hot. God enables the Messiah to perform such great miracles that no prophet before him has ever achieved. So that universal peace will reign even between the beasts of prey and those which are gentle; they will freely intermingle. In his time no evil will be found neither in beast nor in man. War and all violence will vanish at the behest of the One Victorious God. We shall substantiate our statements by reference to the Holy Torah and to the utterances of all the prophets-upon them be the most excellent peace!-God-inspired utterances concerning the advent of this noble personage and the succoring at his hands of this weak and afflicted people, the people of Israel, who are persecuted by the nations and despised by all the other religious sects. At his hands they will rejoice, for he will deliver them from their martyrdom and free them from persecution, this being one of the numerous miracles that God will send him to perform. He will remove the burden from this people, relieve their distress, break their yoke and fetters, and transform their misfortune into happiness, their excruciating misery into pleasure great and enduring, and their curse into blessing. Through him they will enjoy crescive prosperity, and so happy will their state be that the nations who used to revile them will boast by them; those who reduced them to servitude will serve them, and those who upbraided them
for their shortcomings will pardon them. God has promised all that and what is even grander and more complete. The early fulfillment of most of these promises of God is conditioned by our repentance ; but some of them are absolute, even if they do not repent, as the appearance of this noble person and the saving of the nation through his hands. All the misfortunes and misery threatened by God were visited upon them, especially all that is threatened in the Scriptural chapters beginning, "If ye will walk in my statutes" \({ }^{1}\) and "It shall come to pass when thou comest to the land." \({ }^{2}\) His curse fell upon the tribes. The nations shattered them, sold them as man servants and maid servants, and scattered them broadcast over the earth. Not satisfied with all this the jeering nations asserted that the Law had been abrogated and annulled. We shall enter into that subject as far as possible to prove that the Torah has not been abrogated and never will be-please God!-and that it will not be annulled or be forgotten out of the mouths of the people as long as the heavens and the earth last; and furthermore, this people will not be pierced through, will not be destroyed, will not disappear.

We shall proceed to prove all this step by step, with the help of God. Were we to attempt to mention all that the prophetspeace be upon them!-adduce concerning this subject the pages of this book would be insufficient. But we shall quote as many passages as space permits, since they will satisfy the one whose views on this subject are not decided, the one who is opposed to this doctrine and the one who upholds it. God forbid that His promise to our nation should not be kept but his threat remain! "Far be it from God to do evil, and from the Almighty to act unrighteously!" \({ }^{3}\)

To prove that the Messiah will appear and that the people will be delivered at his hands, and to show from which tribe he will come, we cite the Scriptural passage, "He is here but not now, I behold him but he is not near. A star hath stepped forth from Jacob and a sceptre hath arisen from Isiae!. He smites the head of Moab and the crowns of all the sons of Seth," \({ }^{4}\) etc. to

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Lev. XXVI. \({ }^{\hat{3}}{ }^{2}\) Deut. XXVI, i. \({ }^{3}\) Job. XXXIV, 10.
\({ }^{4}\) Numbers XXIV, 17.
}
the end of the chapter. It is also said, "The sceptre shall not depart from Judah or a ruler from between his feet until Shiloh come. And unto him shall be the submission of the nations." \({ }^{1}\) This passage has reference to the Messiah.

As for the prophet Isaiah, many are his prophecies concerning the occasion of the appearance of the Messiah, his description, his glory, and the peace that will reign among all creatures -man and beast-at his command and decree, through the inspiration diffused among these creatures by their Creator. Many of his descriptions are very beautiful; some we have mentioned, some not. Of the latter is the passage, "A branch shall come out of the stock of Jesse, a scion from his roots shall sprout, and the spirit of the Law shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding.-And He shall inspire him with the fear of the Lord;" \({ }^{2}\) and furthermore, " The wolf shall dwell with the lamb." \({ }^{3}\) Concerning the in-gathering of Israel in those days he says, "It shall come to pass on that day that the Lord shall stretch forth His hand a second time to acquire the remnant of His people. And a banner shall be raised over the nations. He shall gather together the outcasts of Israel." \({ }^{*} \mathrm{He}\) continues his description with the words, "Unto him kings are gathered", and "among them are those who have no book and whose language we do not understand. And he shall come up as a suckling before Him and as a root from an arid land." \({ }^{5}\) In reference to the outcome of that he says, "And the desire of the Lord shall prosper at His hands." \({ }^{6}\) And further, "How pleasant upon the mountains are the feet of the messenger who proclaimeth peace, who bringeth tidings and announceth salvation, who saith unto Zion, 'Thy King reigneth;'" \({ }^{7}\) "Shout aloud, exult together ye desolate places before the eyes of all nations, for all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our Gorl;" " "These shall come from afar, these from the north and from the west, and these from the land of Sinnin." "Thus saith the Lord, 'Rehold I raise my hand to the nations and to the people do I lift up my standard, and they shall bring thy children upon the arm and thy daughters they shall bear upon the
\({ }^{1}\) Gen. XLIX, io. \({ }^{2}\) Is. XI. I. \({ }^{8}\) Idem XI, 6. 'Idem XI, II and 12.
\({ }^{5}\) Idem LIII, 2. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem LIII, \(10 .{ }^{t}\) Idem LII, \(7 . \quad{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Idem}\) LII, 9.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XLIX, 12.
shoulder. And kings shall be thy aitendants and their princes thy nurses. With their face to the ground shall they bow down unto thee and the dust of thy feet shall they lick;" "I say unto the north, 'Give' and to the south 'Do not destroy. Bring my sons from afar and my daughters from the end of the earth.' " \({ }^{2}\) There are many such passages, especially in the Book of Isaiah. In the other prophetical books that subject is treated in numerous instances all of which we cannot quote here. We shall mention only a few: "Behold days are coming, saith the Lord, and I shall establish unto David a righteous sprout and a king shall reign. And he shall be wise and do judgment and righteousness in the land. In his days Judah shall be saved and Israel shall dwell in security ; " \({ }^{3}\) " His majestic oil shall be from him, and his ruler shall go forth from his inner part, and I shall bring him near and approach him;" " "Rejoice exceedingly, O daughter of Zion! Shout aloud, O daughter of Jerusalem! Behold thy king cometh unto thee, righteous and victorious, a poor man who rideth upon an ass, upon a wild ass, the colt of female asses." \({ }^{5}\)

Concerning the redemption of the nation we read: "At that time will I bring you again, even in the time that I gather you: for I will make you a name and a praise," etc.;" "And it shall come to pass, that as you were a curse among the heathen, O house of Judah, and house of Israel, so I save you, and you shall be a blessing: fear not, but let your hands be strong;" \({ }^{7}\) "And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; and the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of the Lord for servants and housemaids; and they shall take them captives, whose captives they were, and they shall rule over their oppressors." \({ }^{8}\)

Concerning the resurrection of the dead we read: "Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, O my people, I will open your graves, and cause you to come up out of your graves, and bring you into the land of Israel." \({ }^{\circ}\) Concerning the descent of prophecy and inspiration upon the world we read: "And it shall come to

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Is. XLIX, 22 and 23. \({ }^{2}\) Idem XLIII, 6. \({ }^{3}\) Jer. XXIII, 6.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem XXX, 21. \({ }^{5}\) Zech. IX, 9. \({ }^{\circ}\) Zeph. III, 29. \({ }^{\circ}\) Zech. VIII, 13.
\({ }^{8}\) Is. XIV, 2. \({ }^{9}\) Ez. XXXVII, 12.
}
pass afterward, that I will pour out my spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions; and also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out my spirit;" " Neither will I hide my face any more from them; for I have poured out my spirit upon the house of Israel, saith the Lord God." \({ }^{2}\)

As to their possessing the knowledge of God, without needing any instructor, we read: "But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God and they shall be to me for a people;" " "They shall no longer teach one another-a man his brother, or a man his friend-saying, 'Know the Lord,' for all of them shall know the Lord, from their great unto their small ones, saith the Lord. For I will pardon their iniquity and their sins will I remember no more." *

There are also many passages of consolation and prophecy that require extensive explanation. Some are dependent upon the condition of repentance, as the resplendent prince-peace be unto him!-said, "And it shall come to pass that when all these things come upon thee, the blessing and the curse which I place before you, then thou shalt consider in thy heart;" "And the Lord thy God shall turn back thy captives and shall have mercy upon thee;" "And he shall again gather thee from all the nations among whom the Lord thy God thrust thee;" " "And the Lord thy God shall bring thee to the land which thy fathers inherited, and thou shalt inherit it and dwell therein." \({ }^{8}\)

As to those which, although dependent upon the condition of repentence, must nevertheless come to pass as the direct decree of God Itimself is "The minor shall be a thousand and the small one a mighty nation. I, the Eternal, will hasten it in its time." \({ }^{\circ}\)

The sages of blessed memory say, "The son of David will not come until Israel is completely righteous, for it is written, 'And he saw that there was no man, and wondered that there was no
\({ }^{1}\) Joel II, 28 and \(29 .{ }^{2}\) Ez. XXXIX, 29. \({ }^{3}\) Jer. XXXI, 32.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem XXX, 33. \({ }^{\circ}\) Deut. XXX, I. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XXX, 3.
\({ }^{\text {T}}\) Idem XXX, 3. \({ }^{\text {IIdem XXX, 5. }}{ }^{\circ}\) Is. XL. 22.
intercessor: therefore his arm wrought salvation for him; and his righteousness sustained him'." And they said further, "As soon as the Children of Israel repent they will be immediately redeemed and the son of David will come to them on that day, as it is written, 'If you will hearken to his voice', and if not, the Holy One, blessed be he, will establish over them a king whose decrees are as severe as those of Haman." If they repent they will be redeemed. If their repentance is spontaneous it will be specially praiseworthy and will hasten the advent of their happiness. But if we await force, trouble and affliction will pursue us, for it is written, " When thou wilt be troubled, and all these things shall have found thee in the end of days, thou shalt return unto the Lord thy God and shalt hearken unto His voice." \({ }^{1}\) We hope that that time has drawn near, please God, because we have read it in the explanation of "moed" "moadim" and "the half," \({ }^{2}\) and they are "idan" "idanim" and "the half of idan," \({ }^{3}\) given by one of the best commentators. A proof of it is the meaning "a conjunction, two conjunctions and a half of a conjunction". That applies to Saturn as the science of the stars demonstrates most clearly. It presides over our nation, and with its transition to the above mentioned conjunctions God will change the condition of the whole world as He promised, "For behold I create new heavens and a new earth. Ye shall not remember the first ones." \({ }^{4}\) And to it the prophet alluded when he said, "At that time shall Michael arise, the great prince who presides over the children of thy people." \({ }^{5}\)

It is incumbent upon us to obey the Creator and stand in awe of Him. If we do that then will it be well with us; but if not, it will be otherwise. To prove that the merciful Creator will not forsake this weak people or withdraw His hand from them, we cite the passages, "And also this, when they were in the land of their enemies I did not reject or despise them;"s "And I shall remember unto them the covenant of former times." \({ }^{\circ}\) Before this He says, "And I shall remember my covenant with Jacob, and my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and the land will I remember." \({ }^{8}\)

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. IV, 30. \({ }^{2}\) Dan. XII, 7. \({ }^{8}\) Dan. VII, 25. \({ }^{4}\) Is. LXV. 17.
\({ }^{5}\) Dan. XII,' I. \({ }^{6}\) Lev. XXVI, 44. \({ }^{\text {T}}\) Idem XXVI. 45. \({ }^{\text {E }}\) Idem XXVI, 42.
}

He promises that he will not destroy, according to the passage, "For I, the Lord, do not change; and ye, O children of Israel, shall not come to an end." \({ }^{1}\) And it is further said, "But thou, my servent Jacob, do not fear; and be not dismayed, O Israel For behold I am thy Saviour from afar; and thy Arm from the land of captivity. And Jacob shall return and be quiet and tranquil, and none shall terrify, for I am with thee, saith the Lord, to save thee. Verily, I will make an end of all the nations amongst whom I have scattered you, but of thee I will not make an end. I will correct thee according to thy desserts and will not leave thee altogether unpunished,"," which means, "He will not destroy thee." And it is written, "Thus saith the Lord who giveth the sun for light by day and the ordinances of the moon and of the stars for a light by night, who divideth the sea when the waves thereof roar-the Lord of Hosts is His name! 'Only when these statutes shall depart from before me, saith the Lord, then shall thy seed cease to be a nation before me forever.'" "Thus, saith the Lord, If the heavens above can be measured and the foundations of the earth searched out beneath, then will I reject all the seed of Israel for all that they have done, saith the Lord;" "I give unto them one heart and one way to fear me all the days, for their good and the good of their children after them. And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn from after them but do good unto them, and plant them in this land, truly with all my heart and with all my soul;" "For thus saith the Lord, 'As I brought upon this people all this great evil so also do I bring upon them all the good which I speak concerning them;'" "Thus saith the Lord of Hosts, 'If the day and the night violate my covenant so that there be not day and night in their season, then shall my covenant with my servant David be broken that there be not unto him a son of a king upon thy throne and the Levites to minister unto me. As the hosts of the heavens cannot be counted and the sand of the sea cannot be measured, thus shall I multiply the seed of David my servant and the Levites my ministers;" "Thus saith the Lord, 'Had it not
\({ }^{1}\) Malachi III, 6. \({ }^{2}\) Jer. XXX, 10 and II . \({ }^{3}\) Jer. XXXI, 34 and 35.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem XXXI, 36. \({ }^{5}\) Idem XXII, 39 and 41. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XXXII, 42.
\({ }^{7}\) Idem XXXIII, 20 and 22.
been for my covenant by day and by night, the statutes of heaven and earth I would not have made. Also the seed of Jacob and David my servant I shall not despise to take from his seed ruiers over the seed of Isaac and Jacob; for I shall turn back their captivity and shall have mercy upon them.' "1 All that is a testimony that He neither forsakes nor destroys them.

Likewise, their Divine Law will not be nullified, abrogated, altered or pass away, according to the word by the tongues of the truthful prophets-peace be upon them! " 'And as for me, this is my covenant with them', saith the Lord, 'my spirit which I have put upon thee and my words which I put in thy mouth shall not depart from the mouth of thy seed,' saith the Lord.", And it is further written, "Were it not for my covenant by day and by night, the statutes of heaven I would not have made." \({ }^{3}\) The covenant refers to the Torah. And in His perspicuous Book we are enjoined that "It shall not be forgotten from the mouth of his seed." This alone is proof sufficient that it will not be annulled or abrogated. Especially is this the case in the various passages wherein He commanded us and our children to observe it for all times, not to add thereto or diminish therefrom: "The thing which I command thee this day thou shalt observe to do: thou shalt not add thereto or diminish therefrom." Through it the penal laws are inflicted, the covenant is ratified, compacts are made through its observance, and conduct is regulated by it, so that He says in the last oath and covenant, "Cursed be the man who doth not uphold this Torah to do them." This covenant was confirmed unto us before our creation, our fathers having made it in our behalf: "Not with you alone did the Lord make this covenant and this oath but with the one who is standing with us this day before the Lord our God and with the one who is not with us this day." \({ }^{\prime \prime}\) We shall not be exculpated before God if we forsake it and take upon ourselves another law merely because the nations deride our claim, saying, "For your good God has sent us a prophet who has abrogated your law."

Know then, my brother, that nothing prevents God from

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Jer. XXX, 25. \({ }^{2}\) Is. LIX, 21. \({ }^{3}\) Jer. XXXIII. \(25 .{ }^{4}\) Deut. XXXI, 2I.
\({ }^{5}\) Idem XIII, I. \({ }^{6}\) Idem XXVII, \(26 .{ }^{7}\) Idem XXIX, 13 and 14.
}
sending unto His world whomsoever He wishes whenever He wishes, since the world of holiness sends forth emanations unceasingly from the light world to the coarse world to liberate the souls from the sea of matter-the world of nature-and from destruction in the flames of hell. Even before the revelation of the Law He sent prophets to the nations, as our sages of blessed memory explain, "Seven prophets prophesied to the nations of the world before the giving of the Torah: Laban, Jethro, Balaam, Job, Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar." And again after its revelation nothing prevented Him from sending to them whom He wished that the world might not remain without religion. The prophets declared that the other nations would serve Him from the rising of the sun to the setting thereof: "For from the rising of the sun to the setting thereof great is my name among the nations." And further, "For unto me shall every knee bend and every tongue swear fealty." \({ }^{2}\) Us He chose and exalted from among the nations, not because of our surpassing excellence but because of His regard for our fathers Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob: "Not because you were more numerous than all the other nations did the Lord desire you and choose you-for you are the least among the nations-but because of the Lord's love for you and to keep the oath which He swore unto your fathers;" "'I love you,' saith the Lord. And they say, 'In what respect hast thou loved us.' 'I loved Jacob.' "* God chose us, revealed unto us His laws and ordinances, and imposed upon us a weighty task such as He did not impose upon anyone before or after us, in order thereby to make our reward great: "And the Lord commanded us to carry out these statutes for our good throughout all times, to keep us alive, even as we are this day;" "It shall be accounted rightconsness unto us to do all these statutes;" "He declared His words to Jacob, His statutes and judgments to Israel. He hath not done so to any other nation;" "And ye shall be unto me a peculiar treasure from among all people;"s "For which is the great nation unto whom God is near?"; "For which is the great nation which has righteous statutes and judgment?"

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Malachi I, Ir. \({ }^{2}\) Is. XL, XXIII. \({ }^{5}\) Deut. VII, 7. \({ }^{*}\) Malachi I, 2.
}
\({ }^{8}\) Deut. VI, \(24 .{ }^{\circ}\) Deut. VI, 24. \({ }^{7}\) Ps. XCLVII, 19 and 20.
\({ }^{8}\) Ex. XIX, 5. \({ }^{\circ}\) Deut. IV, 8.

And he swore by the tongues of the prophets-peace be upon inem!-that if we forsook His law and the duty He has imposed upon us that He would rule over us with force "'As I live', saith the King, Lord of Hosts, 'I shall rule over you with a ssrong hand and with an outstretched arm.' "1

The Koran mentions that God favored us, that He made us superior to all other men: "O children of Israel, remember my favor wherewith I showed favor unto you; and that to you above all creatures have I been bounteous;" \({ }^{2}\) and further, "I have made you excellent with a settled decree, it is not a rumor." He speaks after this manner in many verses and also to the effect that the Torah has not been abrogated. This contradicts what they assert because of the power they exercise over us, because of our weakness in their eyes, and because our succor has been cut off. And concerning that he said, "As in my presence, and declares true what is in my presence from the Torah." \({ }^{3}\) And he says, "How will they submit to thy decision since they have the Torah wherein is the judgment of God?"* The judgment of God shall never be forgotten. And it is further said, "Thou shalt not find any change in the ordinance of God." \({ }^{5}\) He means the Torah. How can we change His tradition and His religion which Moses brought down? Our pious forefathers witnessed no change in God's tradition and religion received from Moses His messenger. Following in their footsteps we have made choice of it, and emulating their laudable qualities we cling fast to the Torah and the performance of its duties and precepts, for its exchange or alteration is forbidden. It is further said, "God desireth to declare these things unto you and direct you according to the ordinances of those who have gone before you." \({ }^{6}\) That indicates that Mohammed was a prophet to them but not to those who preceded them in the knowledge of God. And he said, "O People of the Book, He shall not accept a deed of you unless ye fulfill the Torah." \({ }^{T}\) And again, "If there is any doubt concerning what I reveal unto thee, then ask those who received my Book before thou didst." This indicates that He would not have command-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ez. XX, 33. \({ }^{2}\) Sura II, 38 and 116. \({ }^{3}\) Idem III, 44 ; LXI, 6.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem V, 47. \({ }^{5}\) Idem XXXV, 42. \({ }^{6}\) Idem IV, 31. \({ }^{7}\) Idem V, 72.
}
ed him to ask concerning the Book had He annulled it. And if they say, "Lo, our Book abrogates your Book, just as your Book abrogates the Book of Abraham," we reply, "That is not true. On the contrary, we uphold the religion of our fatehr Abraham, and especially circumcision which God made incumbent upon him, according to the passage, "For I know him, that he will command his sons and his house after him,'"1 etc. When God sent Moses al-Kalim with the Torah to the Children of Israel they were six hundred thousand. And God made incumbent upon them what He had made incumbent upon Abraham, but to those duties he added what the times required. But He did not annul the Law of Abraham. On the contrary, in a number of passages Moses al-Kalim calls upon God in His name and in the name of Isaac and Jacob. And all the women whom they were permitted to marry were of noble lineage, because the men were small in numbers, so that they did not need to marry purified daughters of Canaan. But when the people became numerous they went in unto them. That, however, does not constitute an abrogation.

Thus He obligated the Children of Noah to observe only seven laws. This was because the Noachides were few in number and because the pre-Abrahamic period could not bear more laws. When Abraham appeared God enjoined upon him the observance of various additional laws. He carried out the Law of Moses, taking it as a duty upon himself before it was binding. \({ }^{2}\) Likewise, when God imposed duties upon the Children of Israel to be performed in the Land of Syria they assumed these duties before they entered the land as a mark of obedience to their Creator. Instance the unleavened bread, the shew bread, the pressed grain, the Feast of Weeks, and other commands which were to be carried out in the Land of Syria, but which they nevertheless observed forty years in the desert. They could have believed in them without doing them, but they did them that they might believe in them. Similarly, Adam, Noah and Abraham. In reference to Adam we read, "And he placed him in the garden of Eden to till and to guard it ." \({ }^{3}\) In the case

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Gen. XVIII, \({ }^{2}\) Yoma 28b; Kiddushin 82a. \({ }^{3}\) Gen. II, 15 .
}
of Abraham we read, "Because Abraham has hearkened to my voice and observed my charge." \({ }^{\prime \prime}\) Similarly, God has made incumbent upon us in the days of the Messiah all that pertains to sacrifices and other things, though there never appears again that which was explained by the tongue of the prophet Ezekiel concerning the offerings and the building of the Temple. And similarly, the gathering of all the nations unto the Messiah, according to the passage, "All the nations shall be gathered unto it, the name of the Lord." When they say unto us; "That was incumbent upon you in the time of Moses but not otherwise; when other times came ye abrogated your Low and entered into another", we reply, "Know that God commanded that all the people should serve according to the Law; and He permitted to every people something which he forbade to others, and He forbade to them something which He permitted to others, for He knoweth what is best for His creatures and what is adapted to them even as the skilled physician understands his patients, and even more since the physician prohibits food and nourishment to whomsoever he wishes, and permits them to whomsoever he wishes, and they dare not contradict him in anything, because they yielded themselves up to him in good faith, sincerity and justice, the more reason that the Creator, to whom nothing can be compared, who is above all comparison or thing compared above the intelligent and the intelligible, understands the well-being of all His creatures; their reckoning and their punishment are entirely in His hands. Whomsoever He wishes He punishes, whomsoever He wishes He rewards, and whomsoever He wishes He compassionates. No hand is above His, and neither interdict nor decree are necessary against the one whom He regards worthy of being punished and cut off from the Divine mercy. All are in His service. His mercy gives them ample sustenance in this world and in the world to come, as it is written, "Good is the Lord to all and His mercies are over all His creatures." \({ }_{3}\) It is obligatory upon us to observe what is in our hands, that which we have learnt concerning Him, that we disobey not one of the Divine Laws and become as Holy Writ hath it, "They made me the

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Idem XXVI, 5. \({ }^{3}\) Jer. III, 17. \({ }^{8}\) Ps. CXLV, 9.
}
keeper of the vincyards but my own vineyard have I not kept." \({ }^{1}\) To the service that all His creatures owe Him as He wishes and how He wishes there is a very nice example: A king required the services of the people of his city to build a palace. Some of them were architects, some were carpenters, some decorators, some mortar mixers, and some smiths. Of these some zealously carried out the command of the king, some were lax, and some deserted the king's service. The king had maintained all of them. The manner of their service was made known to the king and he waited until he sent for them and called them to account for the manner in which they had carried out his command. He rewarded all those who have done well in their trade more than they deserved, and punished all those who misbehaved in their trade and repentence was of no avail to the penitent if good works had not preceded him. Similarly, the Creator-magnified be His praise!-knows the ruin of this world and the abode of the future world. He therefore sends prophets in every age and period that they might urge the creatures to serve Him and do the good, and that they might be a road-guide to righteousness. The one who was saved was saved through his understanding; and the one who perished perished with full understanding. It is incumbent, then, upon every people to be led aright by what has been communicated to them through revelation and to emulate their prophets, their leaders and their regents. Not one people remained without a law, for all of them are from one Lord and unto Him they all return. All call unto Him, all turn their faces unto Him, and every pious soul is translated to Him, as it is written, "And the spirit returns unto God who gave it." \({ }^{2}\) We shall follow this subject with the mention of the world to come in the chapter after this-please God!--since after the Messiah there is nothing save that--truly God knows better and is wiser.

Similarly, when we argue with non-Jewish disputants in regard to the nullification of our Law, we give them a silencing reply: "What do you say about the Law received by Moses al-Kalim? What distinguishes it, ignorance or wisdom?" They must perforce answer not "ignorance" but "wisdom." This an-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Song of Songs I, 6. \({ }^{2}\) Eccl. XII, 7.
}
swer suffices, for wisdom is never altered, changed, abrogated or replaced by something else. God forbid that He should give a command at the hands of a prophet with signs, proofs, miracles and extraordinary manifestations in the heavens, and then should set about to abrogate and annul it. But it is His way to continually command whom He wishes and send whom He wishes to whomsoever He wishes, since all the worlds are His possession and in His grasp. A proof that He sends a prophet to every people according to their language is found in this passage of the Koran, "We sent a prophet only according to the language of His people." Consequently had He sent a prophet to us He would have surely been of our language, and again, had He been for us why did God say to him, "Lo thou art one of the apostles sent to warn a people whose fathers I have not warned." He meant the people who served at-Lat and al-Uzzah. As for us, behold our fathers were not without warnings throughout an extended period, and likewise prophets did not fail them. But Mohammed's message was to a people whose fathers had not been warned and who had no Divine Law through which to be led aright, therefore he diretced them to his law since they were in need of it. And as for other people they had something to lead them aright. It is not proper to contradict those who are of another religion since their irreligion and their punishment are not our concern but that of the Praised and Exalted One. But it is our duty to fear and reverence Him as He commanded us in the Law which He delivered to our prophets. Through it the covenant was assumed by them and by us, as we have pointed out in this treatise. Thus spoke one of the learned condemning the bigotry of the sects and their strife, "The teachings of bigotry shall not tyrannize forever, for knowledge has appeared in its stead and is spread broadcast. Take as proof the fact that the seekers of knowledge are going from strength to strength although the ignorant multitude are not cognizant of it." Since the Creatorblessed and exalted be He!-controls the record of all mankind according to which they receive their deserts, He brings to light their good and their evil deeds just as Holy Writ declares, "The

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Sura XIV, 4.
}
end of the matter makes the whole thing understand: fear God and keep His commandments for this is the whole duty of man. For every work God bringeth in judgment with every hidden thing, whether it be good or whether it be evil.".

Know my brother-may God help us and thee to His favor -that our servile condition among the nations and the contempt which is heaped upon us by the other religions were anticipated by the prescience of the Creator-praised be He!-in the beginning of the prosperity of our ancestors that misfortune would visit us, unhappiness be appropriated to us, the land consume us, and servitude destroy us; as the Scriptures attest, "Ye shall perish among the nations, and the land of your fathers shall consume you." \({ }_{2}\) The nations do revile us, treat us contemptuously and turn their hands against us, so that we stand among them in speechless terror as the sheep before the shearer, even as it is written, "As the ewe is dumb before its shearers." \({ }^{3}\) Because of that the Hebrew poet cries,
"Oh how I hope unto my God!-
See Rachel's children fleeced like sheep !-
When will this awful exile cease!"
We are like the sparrow in the hand of a child who plays with it until the bird is half dead-and the child tias no compassion ! There are several poems on that theme. A Hebrew poet compares us to
"A sparrow bound to hand of child
Who thrusts it here and thrusts it there,
And laughs with glee to hear the bird
Give forth its terror-laden screech."
An Arabian poct likens us to
About the snares of death-
"A sparrow captive held
By child who lets it flutter
The child makes this his pleasure!"
In fine, they have no pity or compassion upon us, for no one

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Eccl. XII, 13 and 14. \({ }^{2}\) Lev. XXVI, 38. \({ }^{8}\) Is. LIII, 7.
}
sympathized with us in our dire distress, or as the Scriptures express it, "For who hath compassion upon thee, O Jerusalem, who pities thee or turns aside to ask after thy well-being?" \({ }^{1}\) Our people bewailed their lot in extended threnodies, one of which is the Book of Lamentations. All the prophets of blessed memory gave expression to that sentiment in their writings. Our prince David-peace be upon him!-prophesied in Mizmor l'Asaph the destruction of the Temple and the chastisement to be meted out to the people: "O God, nations enter into Thy inheritence!"2 In every generation the sages of our people uttered elegies too numerous for tomes to contain or memory to retain.

Thus in these times Shelomo Hakkatan \({ }^{3}\) and Rabbi Jehudah Hallewi have written volumes of that kind. We shall quote two or three stanzas from their works because of their literary excellence and the surpassing beauty of the sentiment, The following is from Shelomo-may God have compassion upon him-
"Our years pass in poverty and contempt.
For light we hoped but our lot is shame and humiliation!
Serfs rule over us in exile!
Save, O Lord, for Thine is the power!
For Thy Name's sake, O Lord, show us a propitious sign!
O Lord, when will the wonders cease!
Sheshech ruled o'er me, laying me prostrate;
I was captive taken by Seir, Greece and Persia;
They scattered me through Elam, Meshech and Tyre;
Also Ishmael slew and devastated
For years five hundred and fifty-nine. \({ }^{4}\)
O Lord, when will the wonders cease!"

Another poem of his-may God have mercy upon him!-has these lines:

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Jer. XV, 5. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. LXXIX, I. \({ }^{8}\) Ibn Gebirol.
\({ }^{4}\) Refer to Translator's Introduction to the Bustan.
}
"Wounded and crushed, beneath my load I sigh, Despised and abject, outcast, trampled low; How long, O Lord, shall of violence cry, My heart dissolve with woe?
How many years without a gleam of light, Has thralldom been our lot, our portion pain! With Ishmael as a lion in his might, And Persia as an owl of darksome night, Beset on either side, behold our plight
Betwixt the twain.
Wherefore wilt Thou forget us, Lord, for aye?
Mercy we crave!
O, Lord, we hope in Thee alway,
Our King will save!"1
Lines from Rabbi Jehuda Hellewi-may God have mercy upon him!
"My oaks" are wither'd!
My strength doth fail!
Calamity has o'ertaken me!
My way is hedg'd about!
Friends have ceas'd;
Shepherds disappear'd, And the wicked destroy
The vine of Samadar.
The wonderful secret
No one reveals.
Majesty goes into exile
Amongst thorns and thistles.
Mine enemies are lords,
And many mine accusers!
They are unto me as scorpions-
Loving kindness has vanished!
Woe unto me for I sojourn in Meshech,
I dwell in the tents of Kedar! ! \({ }^{3}\)

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Translation by Nina Davis, "Songs of Exile by Hebrew Pocts."
" According to Harkavy the "oaks" are probably the trees which were at the entrance to the Temple, mentioned in Ezek. XL and XLI.
\({ }^{3}\) Poems of Rabbi Jchudah Hallewi, edited by Harkavy; Vol. II, part 2, number 17.
}

The number of such effusions is very great. Were it not that we have firm confidence in the promises of God, were it not for our firm conviction that He does not contradict the testimony given by the great prophets in their authentic books handed down to us from father to son, we would have been lost, we would have perished, yea every single one of us! And especially have we confidence in this word of God, "And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies I wlil not cast them away neither will I abhor them to destroy them utterly." \({ }^{1}\) Although we were beset by these terrible conditions and intense sufferings we held fast to His Divine Law and gave ear to His mandates, we had confidence in His covenants and therefore did not set any of them aside, as it is written, "All this is come upon us, yet have we not forgotten Thee, neither have we dealt falsely with Thy covenant." \({ }^{2}\) And furthermore: "Have we forgotten the Name of our God or spread out our hands unto a strange god? Behold God may search into this." \({ }_{3}\) Had any of the other nations been visited with a tenth of a tenth, or even less of the misfortunes suffered by us from the remote past down to the very present, they would abandon whatever religious faith they possess, they would desert their sects at short notice. Far be it from the Almighty God-lauded be His name, and exalted His Praise!-to carry out His threat against us or leave His promise unfulfilled. The Truthful One does not blast thy hopes, as He Himself hath declared, "For I am the Lord-those that hope in Me shall not be put to shame." \({ }^{*}\) Verily such is the hope we cherish day by day. He makes this promise and fulfils it unto us in the time anticipated by His prescience, the time ordained by His power and unshakable decree. Had our sins interfered with the fulfillment of the promise God would have allowed for it as He is aware of our feebleness in exile and our inability to carry out the Divine Law. By my life, it is our duty to be more circumspect than the other people with regard to religious matters. Especially is it our duty to fulfill certain commands, as for instance those relating to the Sabbath, circumcision, Passover, the menses, and

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Lev. XXVI, 44. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. XLIV, 18. \({ }^{3}\) Idem XLIV, 21. \({ }^{4}\) Is. XLIX, 23.
}
others which we find it possible to observe, viz., "Ye shall not commit adultery," "Ye shall not steal," etc., so that, unlike all the other nations, we should have none of our people appearing in the streets as harlots, idolators or murderers. If we earnestly consider our shortcomings even partially as much as the nations notice them, and lay them bare in the manner the nations expose them for us, there would be nothing against us. Thou knowest the story how "the Lord said because the daughters of Zion are haughty," \({ }^{3}\) how the prophets reproached them, and the terrible punishment that was thereafter visited upon them, hastening the ruin of the Temple and of the whole country. Truly He hath visited our nation with the full measure of calamities, as it is written, "For she hath taken double from the Lord for all her sins." \({ }^{4}\) How many of the other nations served Him only with innumerable transgressions, disobedience, robbery, guile, wrath and bloodshed! But we recognize full well that the Creator has imposed greater responsibilities upon us than upon others, and that He deals with us more severely than with them. Our punishment He determines, theirs not. In this manner God shows His love for us, by this means does He ennoble us, as we have explained in the early part of this chapter. Our Law and their Law unite in testifying to that. In no wise can they escape this fact, especially when God had promised to our ancestors Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, as indicated in the passage, "All of you stand this day before the Lord your God . . . to enter into the covenant of the Lord . . . that He may raise thee this day to be unto Him a nation and that He may be unto thee a God, as He hath spoken unto thee and as He swore unto thy fathers Abraham, Isaac and Jacob." We shall explain that by means of an illustration. An expert physician visiting two patients observes that one of them is on the point of death, but the other has a firm hold on life and there is every reason to believe that he will recover. The physician says to their relatives: "Keep this one warm. L.et him eat only a specific kind of food and drink, only a specific kind of liquid and carefully weighed. Let him not take
\({ }^{1}\) Ex. XX, 14. \({ }^{2}\) Idem, \(15 .{ }^{8}\) Is. III, 16. \({ }^{4}\) Idem, XL, 2.
\({ }^{5}\) Deut. XXIX, 9, 12.
too freely of food or drink." He here refers to the patient whom he expects to recover. Then he adds, "Let the other patient do just as he pleases: eat what he pleases and drink what he pleases, irregardless of weight, and withhold nothing from him." But this because his case is hopeless. Thus Godwho to be sure is far exalted above any comparison-has forbidden us much in the way of food, drink, garments, marriage and other things, but did not in like manner restrict other nations, as it is written, "He stood and measured the earth; He saw and bound nations." \({ }^{1}\) What He permits to one nation He did not impose upon others, as it is written, "He declares His words to Jacob, His statutes and judgments to Israel. He hath not done thus to any other nation." \({ }^{2}\) Likewise, He gave righteous statutes and judgments: He does not grant respite to anyone who transgresses them wilfully. Concerning that it is said, "Thy testimonies are exceedingly true;"3 and again "The testimonies of the Lord are true." \({ }^{4}\) Since He regards us as pre-eminent, He holds us to strict account in this present fleeting life, as it is written, "Only you do I know from among all the nations of the earth. Therefore I visit upon you all your iniquities." 5 The full meaning of "I know" is "I know your superiority," e. g., "I know thee by name." He hastens to chastise us that He may purify us from our sins just as the intelligent and affectionate father promptly administers bitter medicine to his son against the boy's will, in order to purge his body of deleterious waste. The father certainly knows better than the boy what is for his good. It is therefore incumbent upon us to accept His chastisement cheerfully that ours may be the reward. He imposes severe penalties upon us in order to make our portion beautiful, for it is written, "Whomsoever the Lord loveth he chastiseth." We therefore pray God to cause both of us to be of His pious ones, His beloved prophets, His regents and His favorites, that He may make us rejoice through His mercy, and through His might make our end happy. Finished is the sixth chapter, there follows it

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Habak. III, 6. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXLVII, 19, 20. \({ }^{3}\) Idem, XCIII, 5.
\({ }^{4}\) Idem, XIX, 8. \({ }^{5}\) Amos III, 2. \({ }^{6}\) Ex. XXXIII, 17. \({ }^{7}\) Prov. III, 12.
}

\section*{CHAPTER VII.}

This chapter treats of the other world, the termination, to which belongs Paradise, the Abode of life and eternity.

Know, my brother,-may God help both of us through His spirit!-that the Creator,-may He be praised, He who is glorious and mighty!-gradually carries man from one state to another, each state being loftier, more exalted and nobler than the one preceding. \({ }^{1}\) The proof thereof is the following. Originally a man exists not in actuality but only potentially in minerals and plants and later appears as semen in the loins of his parent. Then God carries him, as a drop of semen, from the loins of his father to the womb where a natural force, bestowed by the Universal Soul, unites with him. That force, called growth, causes him to develop in the blood of the courses until the drop of semen finally becomes a foetus. For after the semen is in the womb a quantity of coagulated blood is gradually formed with the aid of the All-Wise and Omnipotent One. This blood rolls together and becomes flesh and bone. Through the providence of God its inherent capacity for development increases until its form is finished and its structure complete. The unborn infant then quietly awaits the divinely appointed time when he is to be brought forth from his dark prison, by way of a very narrow path, into the air of this world. In that prison he did not see the sun, the moon or the stars, and was away from the breath of the world with its pleasant food, beautiful garments and numerous other pleasures. When going forth into the air of the world he weeps most grievously and breathes spasmodically at the loss of his former habitation, for he knows not that the Creator took him from a condition of imperfection to one of greatness, from low to noble degree. He is now endowed with another one of the natural forces which the Universal soul bestows so generously. This force is called the sensual: It makes him conscious of cold and heat,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Naturanschautng, p. 162; Logik und Psychologic, p. 132.
}
fatigue and pain, and enables him to find pleasure in rest, sleep and nutriment. The blood which served as constructive material, is made palatable by God that the child may suck it from the breasts. It is not oversweet, loathsome, sour, salty or greasy. Not a single one of its ingredients is unpleasant: it is pure, mild, savory and not overcopious. When it flows the channel does not get clogged and the suction is not difficult. The child remains in this condition for some time. After he has been weaned and the four years \({ }^{1}\) of his infancy completed he is endowed with another force by the Universal Soul,--the faculty of speech. He utters words, at first with difficulty, advancing step by step and according to the manner and method of the first two powers, growth and sensation. He walks upon his feet, eats and drinks, speaks, learns to write and to read, and commits to memory what he can until he attains puberty. Then comes the faculty of understanding, in every way superior to the first three powers. He distinguishes good from evil, and is duty bound to learn the laws religious and civil. He continues to develop along these lines until he becomes a man of thirty years. From that time on up to his fortieth year he gains in understanding and knowledge. Some time between his fiftieth and sixtieth years he is endowed with the force of spirituality, the richest and most complete of the emanatory forces. \({ }^{2}\) Finally there occurs his translation at the moment pre-ordained by God. He brings him to the Dwelling of the other world, to happiness or to misery, which ever his conduct has earned for him in this world. All the pleasures of this world when compared with those of the Future World are not as much as a drop of water compared to the whole sea. In like manner, the foetus's pleasure in the womb of its mother is not as much as a kirat \({ }^{3}\) to the one hundred million pleasures of this world. Consequently what we have stated above is perfectly clear, that God takes man from one state to another, each loftier than the other, and that the last is a state loftier,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Naturanschaunng, p. 162.
\({ }^{2}\) As regards the stages of man's physical, intellectual and spiritual development Nathanel differs somewhat from the Ihwan as-Safa, but is manifestly influenced by them. Cf. Weltsecle, p. 22; Naturauschaunug, p. 162. \({ }^{3}\) A kirat equals four grains.
}
a gradation higher, a degree nobler than this world in every respect, beyond definition and description. Since that is so, men are ignorant of the nature of the After-life and cannot conceive it, for they are accustomed to this world. They are like the foetus which is ignorant of the appearance of the world since it is accustomed to imprisonment in the womb. Suppose we could ask the foctus the appearance of the world-the foetus being accustomed to the womb in the abdomen of its mother: "Which dost thou prefer,-to remain where thou art, or to go forth to a very spacious place of ampler atmosphere, where blow the wild winds and the gentle zephyrs of the world? Therein are foods of divers savors, garments of every color, marriage, wine, covers and cushions, sun, moon, stars, minerals and animals, not to mention a host of other desirable things." The foetus, surprised at our speech, would answer, "Far be it from me! I prefer my present habitation, seeing that it provides more repose and better shelter than all you have mentioned. For I am where heat, cold, wind and rain cannot reach me." Were it possible, my brother, for us to talk thus with the foetus we could listen to its answer and accept its explanation out of consideration for its ignorance of this carthly dwelling and all that is therein, and because its intellect is too limited to conceive the world. The Creator, knowing far better than the foetus what is for its good, translates it from one condition to another according to the dictates of divine wisdom. And thus it is, my brother, with the children of this world. When the prophet said unto them, "Serve God as He should be served and be indifferent to the things the world prizes so highly, for He has a rich reward prepared for you in His Paradise wherein is that which delights the soul and pleases the eye," men were ignorant of the other life because of their inability to conceive it. They desired eternal happiness in this earthly dwelline not knowing that its pleasures are torment and its health illness. That was due to their limited knowledge of the world. Eat only a morsel of what it gives and make light of what it values. Look upon its wealthy as insignificant and its powerful as contemptible. One of the pious, ridiculing this world, exclaimed: "Fie upon it!

Its sweetest eatable-honey-comes from a bee. Its finest material for garments-silk-comes from a worm. Its most fragrant perfume-musk-comes from a beast. \({ }^{1}\) Its most agreeable thing-sexual intercourse-is like discharging urine from the bladder." In fine, my brother, if we wish to keep in good health we must retire regularly to an unoccupied spot and purge ourselves of this world.

Men's ignorance of the Future World is indeed excusable, for in the search after knowledge we reach impassable limits. This is shown by the fact that God made men moderate in every respect. Note his body. It is not unwieldy like that of the elephant, the camel, the rhinoceros or other huge unwieldy animals. His prehensiles are not like theirs: his are not like a canine tooth, a claw, a talon, a hoof or a quadruped's foot. Neither is he like the smaller animals and reptiles, but is a creature of the most perfect symmetry in moderation.

Likewise, God did not make his soul actually like that of the angels or like the souls of brutes, but the medium between these two extremes. Finally there is the moderation of his mechanism. As for the sense of sight, he can see and understand only what is near when its form and color are revealed by light: for when light vanishes color cannot be seen in the darkness. Likewise, the sense of hearing: he hears that which is near and gentle but with difficulty that which is distant or terrible, as for instance the motion of the celestial spheres, thunderbolts or any frightful sound. And likewise, he cannot hear the walking of the ant because of its lightness. \({ }^{2}\) Similarly, the sense of touch: he is not able to touch fire because of its extreme heat or air because of its rareness. Similarly, the faculty of speech: he is not able to utter two or more words at the same time, not to mention that he cannot bray like an ass, and so on. Likewise, his foods are moderate. He cannot eat thorns, fruit stones, dry grasses or nauseating food or drink nauseating water, after the manner of brutes; neither can he eat wood as worms do. All his necessities are moderate in degree and manner.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) The mall musk deer. \({ }^{2}\) Anthropologic, p. II2.
}

When all this is clear, we can show that he also cannot know or comprehend what is beyond his power. \({ }^{1}\) The Scriptures refer to this matter in the words addressed by the Most Holy to Moses al-Kalim: "Thou canst not see my face, for man cannot behold Me and live." \({ }^{\prime}\) One of the commentators explains the passage thus, "It is impossible for thee to gaze upon my essence, for mortal cannot see me and live."

Furthermore, the senses cannot attain a higher power to the measure of power than that which God has meted out to them. The faculty of speech does not trespass upon the function of the faculty of hearing, and hearing not upon smell, touch, or taste. \({ }^{3}\) This rule applies to all the faculties. The sources of taste are limited to nine: sweetness, bitterness, acidity, saltiness, greasiness, pungency, astringency, vileness and purity. There are alo many secondary tastes which no one but God can enumerate. The characteristics of tangible things are limited to ten : they may be hot or cold, wet or dry, heavy or light, hard or soft, rough or smooth. Things visible can have six colors: white, black, red, green, yellow and blue. And likewise things with regard to odor are either sweet-smelling or ill-smelling. Sounds are practically limitless in number, inasmuch as the utterances of men vary according to the dialects of the Arabs, the Barbarian, the Hindoo, the Persian and others; according to the sounds emitted by the different species of animals, birds and reptiles; the sounds of thunder and of the blowing winds and the like; the sounds of trumpets, of cymbals, of the bare knees when knocked together, the sound caused by striking something earthy against something metallic, the roaring of the seas, the sounds of the floods and of the rains, and others which cannot be numbered except by the One who called them into existence-their Creator and their In-ceptor,-may His Glory be magnified! !

Thus it is clear that those who attempt to describe the future world have no conception of its qualities or of the magnitude of its measure because their understanding is too feeble and their judgment inadequate for the purpose. To that world God translates the deserving, thus liberating them from this

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\). Anthropologie, pp. 111, 112. \({ }^{2}\) Ex. XXXIII, 20. \({ }^{3}\) Anthropologie, p. 38.
- Idem, p. 26.
}
world with its suffering, pain, hunger, thirst, cold, griefs, sorrows, afflictions, misfortunes, misery, the artifices of its inhabitants, and delivering them from ignorance and from the numberless unrighteous, corrupt, envious and wicked.

Know, O brother, that God did not create evil, for He Himself declares in His perspicuous Book, "God saw all that He had made and behold it was very good." Evil, then, not being in the scheme of creation was originated by the descendants of Adam who concocted and practiced it. We shall treat that subject in part.

Know, O brother,-may God strengthen both of us through His Spirit!-that evil originated with the creatures of the Creator, despite the assertion of the prophets, "He maketh peace and createth evil, I am the Lord who doeth all these things." We shall explain the matter,-in so far as we are familiar with it-with the aid of knowledge we have acquired from others by the favor of the Creator-Praise to Him!-and by His goodness to us. For if we subject God's creations to a thorough examination we find them all good, notwithstanding many of them are mutually opposed, as for instance, night and day, brightness and darkness, life and death, wealth and poverty, etc. His unity and His wisdom are demonstrated by the fact that He creates things and their contraries. That, however, is not creating evil, although every person not versed in philosophy thinks that death, poverty, darkness, etc., are evils. That is due to the very little exercise he has had in the subtle sciences. As for death, it is unmixed good and divine wisdom, as we have partially pointed out in the chapter entitled, "Confidence in God." Poverty \({ }^{1}\) cannot be evil but good, although those of its advantages which are hidden from us are much more numerous than those which the Creator has revealed. He made His servants poor because He found this state more beneficial and more suitable for them, even if it shocks them. Among other advantages of poverty is that His followers are constantly in need of Him, humble themselves before Him, and His praise does not cease from their mouths

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Although the text has wisdom there can be no doubt that the right reading is "Poverty."
}
by day or by night, which is not the case with the rich who are powerful, arrogant, and neglectiful of the mention of God. Their activity is limited to their affairs which are of no moment, even if they are most successful, for they will have to leave their wealth or their wealth will leave them.

Similarly the poor are secure from the sultan's oppression and his violent treatment of the wealthy ; secure from the highwaymen; from pilfering by night; free from being overwhelmed with care in times of dread; from dissipating their intellectual energy in the effort to hold on to wealth; from anxiously watching the changes in the prices of goods, whether they have become cheap or dear; free from guarding the wares in the storehouses, and all other things on land and sea. Concerning that matter one of the learned remarks, "Let us take our flight to God from dissipating our lives." When he was asked to what he had reference, he answered, "Heaping up wealth." Also the sages of blessed memory say, "He that increaseth wealth increaseth anxiety." \({ }^{1}\) An Arabian poet says likewise, "We increase our cares when we increase our wealth, for direr than all poverty is the amassing of wealth." In fine, my brother, are not the poor free of the characteristics of the envious,- \(\mathrm{inso-}\) lence, wickedness and enviousness of the wealthy? The poor are above such things: they are serene in the thought of God and their Return, and are indifferent to the possessions of the rich. The reward for this is their tranquility. It therefore often happens that God forgives them great sins which they have committed. It thus comes to pass, also, that through God's favor they are punished in this world as such is preferable to punishment in the Future World. If they have committed no sin they are indeed fortunate. God visits them with trials to test them in this world and to discipline them in what is nobler, loftier and more exalted than all the wealth of the world. Only upon his beloved ones and his saints does He bring trials, as it is written, "For whomsoever the Lord loveth He correcteth;", \({ }^{2}\) and again, "The Lord tryeth the righteous."" Thus it is clear that poverty is not evil. This subject is confessedly far more esoteric than exoteric.

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Pirke Aboth II, 8. \({ }^{2}\) Prov. III, 12. \({ }^{8}\) Ps. Xi, 5.
}

The same can be said of night and darkness. But for them thou wouldst not know the length of years and of months and the conjunctions of the planets, and thou couldst not observe the stars that shine by night. He who recognizes the measure of their Creator's wisdom and grandeur is in possession of a clear and pure philosophy, and is exceptionally intelligent, especially in regard to those matters which we have partially treated in the chapter entitled, "Confidence in God." And likewise if time consisted wholly of day the bodies of living beings would undoubtedly break down under the strain of trouble, fatigue and labor which are connected with the prolongation of time, since under such circumstances there would be no repose or tranquility. Sleep is called repose, for the Bible says, "When I slept, I had repose." Night thus becomes a good thing. Assuredly death is not the loss of life and its annihilation, for the soul merely abandons the use of the body. \({ }^{2}\) Poverty is the absence of wealth. Night is the absence of the light of the sun; the latter sets beneath the earth, and the shadow of the earth darkens the atmosphere. \({ }^{3}\) All this refers to the aforementioned noble mysteries and wondrous facts comprehended only by God. Whomsoever He favors He endows with some knowledge of these matters. Such favored ones were the prophets and after them the heirs of their learning.

Thus it is clear that evil was not created by God, but was brought into this world by the sons of Adam. When God enabled them to enjoy all manner of blessings they used these blessings for improper purposes and placed them where they did not belong, thereby changing the blessing into an evil. For instance, God gave man the power to speak of His glory and of His positive and negative commands, read His Book which He wrote with His own Hand, discourse on that which can benefit him, and the like, or as a pious man expressed it, "God mercifully designed that speech should bring man profit and silence bring him peace." But if after receiving this blessing he utters deceitful words, falsehoods, calumnies, frivolities,

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Job III, I4. \({ }^{2}\) Weltseele, p. 102.
\({ }^{3}\) Propacdcutik, p. 57; Anthropologie, p. 179.
}
contumely, abuse and villification of men, his speech becomes wholly evil. Similarly, he does violence with his hands and also misuses his other senses. Especially is this the case with the ability to have sexual connection with which God endowed man for the perpetuation of the human form and the preservation of the human species. In His code He enjoins men to legalize this intercourse by uniting with a chaste woman, such as our religion permits, by means of a marriage contract, in the presence of witnesses and with the utmost publicity. When he cohabits under conditions other than these he commits fornication and his act becomes evil. This holds good even in the matter of eating and drinking. When a man indulges therein beyond his needs and not in proper time it brings upon him pain, aches, swellings and dropsy, and eventually becomes the cause of his death. That is wholly evil. And, likewise, all other things, even fire. When he does not use its light he is benefited with what is baked and cooked by means of it. But if he applies the flame too long to things he sets fire to them unnecessarily and without profit. That becomes evil. It is thus with all existing things. When he makes use of them for improper purposes and leaves them where they do not belong, they become evil.

This is the case even with knowledge. When a man bestows it upon one for whom it was not intended-one unworthy of it-it becomes evil; nay, it is the greatest, the hardest and deserves a severe punishment from God. Concerning that the sages of blessed memory say, "Whosoever raiseth up a disciple who is not fit is as culpable as if he had planted a grove for idolatry, for it is written, "Thou shalt not plant unto thee a grove of any kind of trees." \({ }^{1}\) Through such a disciple evil and wickedness are brought into the world, for he explains what he does not understand, busies himself with what he does not know, blunders about in darkness and goes astray. On his account God brings calamities upon the people of this world, as thou hast learnt from the story of Jereboam, son of Nebat, concerning whom it is written, "For the sin of Jereboam

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut NTT, 21.
}
wherein he sinned and caused Israel to \(\sin .{ }^{" 1}\) The Talmud says, "Whosoever causes the multitude to \(\sin\), the sin of the multitude rests upon him." And especially if he raises up a disciple who explains the law and gives decisions-then woe unto this disciple and still greater woe unto the one who raised him up! There is nothing in all this wide world worse than that deed, for the sages say, "The sword cometh upon the world because of the perversion of justice and because of the one who teaches a law of the Torah not according to the accepted decision." If this disciple is leader of the congregation and does not know what should be sanctified, then woe unto him and greater woe unto the one who set him up as guide; for the sages say, "If a man officiates at the reading desk and makes a mistake, it is a bad sign for him. If he happens to be the precentor, it is a bad sign for the congregation: for the representative and the one he represents are regarded in the same light."

The precentor should be God-fearing, scholarly, quick of comprehension, thorough and fully competent to fulfill all the duties connected with his office: to pray, ask forgiveness, exhort, praise and glorify God, proclaim His Unity, and sanctify His Name; and besides that explain the language-the meaning of words and metaphors, and accurate reading. His age should be twenty years or upwards and he should know how to argue in the Law, and be acquainted with its inner meaning, its commentaries and its subtleties. And it is further necessary that he should be pious and upright, and free from any bodily defect. But if a man without these qualities goes presumptiously before the ark, Scripture says concerning him, even though his voice be pleasant, "Mine inheritance has become like a lion in the wilderness. It giveth forth its voice against me: therefore do I hate it." \({ }^{2}\) The sages of blessed memory say this refers to the congregation that sends down before the ark a precentor who is unfit. This applies even when his voice is pleasant. For sometimes conceit gets the upper hand of such a precentor and he says things which are improper, and thus removes Israel afar from their Father in Heaven. If the precentor is a youth possessing all the qual-

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) I Kings XVI, 21. \({ }^{2}\) Jer. XII, 8.
}
ities we have mentioned, or is an adult whose house is free from transgression and whose youth was becoming-no evil report concerning his early years having gone forth against him-and people do not speak ill of him, is loved by God and desired by men, his prayer is heard before the Throne of Glory and renders Isracl acceptable to their Father in Heaven. He must be beloved if the Holy One-blessed be He ! -is to lend a favorable ear to his entreaties.

And likewise the Jewish community that appoints a man as judge must see to it that he possesses all these good qualities, and in addition be competent to investigate and also know forty-nine reasons for the pure and the impure, \({ }^{1}\) together with the other qualities that the sages note in scholars. And similarly the seven qualities which the sages mention in regard to disciples and the ways of peace and the ways of the scholar\({ }^{2}\) all of them mean in effect that he should fulfill the injunction, "Perfect shalt thou be with the Lord thy God." \({ }^{3}\) The chief of all qualities, the first and the foremost, is the fear of Heaven, as it is written, "The beginning of wisdom is the fear of the Lord." \({ }^{4}\)

A more detailed explanation of the qualities every precentor should possess occurs in the rabbinical writings. We shall give a clear exposition of the subject with the help of God that he who considers it may benefit thereby, please God.

Said our veracious ancestors: "The rabbis have tradited, 'If a man has a full beard he is fit to be a precentor. The decision is according to the view of Rabbi who says, one is fit from the time he is twenty years old.'"
We have found the following in the Responses: "If a city in Israel has no one experienced in descending before the ark except one man who is ofttimes busy with his own work, but there are some youths of eighteen or seventeen, whose beards are not yet full, what is to be done? They may be appointed precentors to discharge the duty of the people so that none of the prayers need be omitted. Hence we see that the statement of the sages to the effect that if a man has a full beard he can

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Pirke Aboth V, io. \({ }^{2}\) Taanit, 17a. \({ }^{3}\) Deut. XVIII, I3. \({ }^{4}\) Ps. CXI, 10.
}
be a precentor, means that a beard is desirable, though not necessary; and especially if the person in question has been highly respectable from his childhood up. Rather than omit the 'Kadosh,' 'Baruch,' 'Yimloch,' and 'Y'he sh'me rabba,' we do not insist upon his being at least eighteen or seventeen years old: he may be only thirteen years and one day old, even though ordinarily he could not officiate as precentor. For when we say, 'It is a general rule that whosoever is notin duty bound to carry out an ordinance cannot discharge the duty of the masses. But it is quite proper to have a youth of thirteen years and one day or more officiate when it is impossible to secure someone older."

We have found also the following in the Responses: "If the sexton of the congregation is to act as precentor, this fact is announced, perchance some one else can officiate instead of him. When this procedure is adopted and they put another in his place-one who will cause Israel to be favored by their Father in Heaven, it is imperative that this man be pious, upright, and without any bodily defect whatsoever. If he is not such, concerning him the Scriptures say, 'Mine inheritance has become tinto me as a lion in the forest. It giveth forth its voice against me, therefore I hate it.' Mar Zutra bar Tobiah said in the name of Rab, 'This has reference to those that send down before the ark a precentor not qualified to officiate, especially on Yom Kippur and on the other fast days.' For it is necessary that the precentor should have the qualities specified above. Rabbi Judah says, 'A man with a large family without means and obliged to toil in the field, but whose house is free from transgression, who has reached his majority and whose youth has been proper, may humbly say the blessing and bring the people into favor.' What is meant by the expression 'whose youth has been proper?' Abayah says, 'It means that nothing disreputable is said about his character as a youth.' Since it is not necessary to announce who he is, so much the less is it necessary to replace him. A precentor's blindness does not disqualify him to officiate, and he should not be replaced so long as his actions are proper and good."

And still further we have found the following in the Rc-
sponses: "If the congregation wishes to have as precentor before the ark a man who is not thoroughly conversant with the Law but who has a melodious voice, and there happens to be present also a scholar who is an adept in the Law but whose voice is not melodious, which takes precedence: the scholar versed in the Law or he with the melodious voice who is not an adept and who occasionally makes incorrect statements? Rabbi says, 'The scholar who is an adept in the Law takes precedence; but if he wishes another to take his place then he should select the one whose voice is melodious, provided that he knows that the latter will make no mistake in the service; otherwise the scholar must officiate.' From all this we learn that whenever the sexton is fit they send him down before the ark as the precentor who shall find favor for Israel in the eyes of their Heavenly Father. The congregation may replace him only with some one who possesses all his good qualities. We do not send down before the ark as precentors beardless youths under twenty years of age. And even in case of a man who has reached his majority but does not understand all connected with the office, the same rule holds good. This holds good all the more if there is at hand some one superior to him, an aged man more versed in the Law, for the former is not an adept. Especially does this proviso obtain in the case of one who is given to incorrect statements or who has a bad reputation: they do not send him down before the ark for all these reasons. Wherever there is a sexton fully qualified to fill the office no one else is preferred. But in case there is no one to descend before the ark and act as precentor, neither a sexton nor another qualified person, rather than omit the "Kadosh," "Baruch" and "Y'he sh'me rabba" we may permit any of the abovementioned to officiate. This applies only in a case where it is impossible to get anyone else, the sole condition being that the precentor must be thirteen years or more. For thus we say, "This is the general rule, 'Whosoever is not duly bound to carry out an ordinance cannot discharge the duty of the masses.'"

Thus, my noble brother,-may God direct thee in the right path!-thou clearly understandest the substance of what the
fathers of blessed memory said about the qualities of the precentor, viz., that he should be acute, penetrating, patient, gentle, God-fearing, prudent, scholarly, quick-witted and fully acquainted with those duties for the performance of which he is sent into the presence of God. He should be a person twenty years old or more and thoroughly conversant with the Law, its reasons and subtleties. Whatever he learns is to intensify his reverence for God. If it is clear that he has acquired all of the above excellencies and his fruits show themselves desirable and excellent-such as the Scripture speaks of, "the fruit of the tree of life"1-then he is worthy to be the leader. There is every reason to expect that he will be successful-that the necessities of the congregation will through him receive favorable attention, according to the word of the sages, "We gain merit through the meritorious," and conversely, "blame through the blameworthy." If he fears God and stands in awe of Him, the Holy One decides the affairs of the community at his hands, bestows upon him whatever he desires, and carries out his requests, even as the saint declared, "The pleasure of those who fear Him He doeth." \({ }^{2}\) It is highly desirable that thou, my brother, belong to this class. May God enable thee to attain righteousness, and in His mercy and beneficence keep thee afar from iniquity.

The man who bestows knowledge upon one unworthy of it is condemned by the learned in unmeasured terms. \({ }^{3}\) They compare him to the fornicator who deposits the sperma hominis where it should not abide. But the punishment of one who squanders knowledge is greater. For the one who deposits the semen where it should not abide brings forth a corporeal being who becomes a worthless fellow known as a bastard. But he who deposits knowledge in one unworthy of it brings forth a spiritual form, wastes that knowledge and injures philosophy, seeing that that spiritual form becomes satanic. For thus the wise have said, "Do not bestow knowledge upon those unworthy of it, lest ye do violence to it; and withhold it not from those worthy of it, lest ye do violence to them." \({ }^{4}\)

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Gen. II, 9. \({ }^{2}\) Ps. CXLV, 19.
\({ }^{3}\) Cf. Le Guide des Egarés, p. 127, note. \({ }^{*}\) Mibhar Hapeninim, p. 6.
}

The arguments advanced enable us, then, to clearly understand that it is not the Creator-blessed and exalted be He!-but man that is the cause of evil. God created all man's appurtenances for good but he makes use of them for evil purposes and thus becomes wicked. From the passage, "He creates evil (ra')"1 we are to infer that He creates evil man but not evil, for the expression "ra'" is used adjectively, as for instance you say, "An evil man," "An evil ruler," and the like. It must be beyond the Praised One to create evil, lies, deception, frivolity, falsehood and calumny, secing that He has forbidden all such to us. Thus when God visits obstinate sinners with severe penalties, e. g., such as are mentioned in the passage, "Behold I bring evil upon the house of Jeroboam, and will cut off from Jeroboam him that pisseth against the wall and him that is shut up and left in Israel, and will take away the remnant of the house of Jeroboam as a man taketh away dung until it is all gone. Him that dieth of Jeroboam shall the dogs eat; and him that dieth in the field shall the fowls of the air eat: for the Lord hath spoken \(\mathrm{it}{ }^{\prime \prime 2}\) - it is for the purpose of chastising. If from one point of view this is evil, from another it is good, since punishment is meted out to the wicked and the perverse for their good, to purge away their evil ; and it is good for others who should be warned thereby and not do the like themselves. Thus God warned Israel, "All these abominations shall ye not do that the land may not vomit you forth." \({ }^{3}\) In fine, the object thereof is that those who are untouched should see to it that they are warned through those who are punished, as it is written, "And those who are leit shall liear and fear, and shall no more act presumptiously." \({ }^{4}\)

And if someone asks, "Why did He create serpents and rapacious beasts, which are evil?" we answer that in that act there is nothing detrimental; on the contrary, they benefit man in various ways; and besides, most of them are afraid of him. Of the manifest benefits we instance the consumption of beasts of prey to satisfy the demands of the stomach. Then there is death prevailing on the face of the earth: were it not that it

\footnotetext{
Is. XLV, 7. \({ }^{2}\) I Kings XIV, ro.
\({ }^{8}\) Lev. XVIII, 26, 28. • Deut. XIX, 20.
}
changes life and reduces places to ruin there would ensue plague and disease, and all the order would become destroyed. Similarly, God placed poison in the corners of the mouths of serpents to enable them to secure their food. It is also useful in compounding powerful treacle for expelling poisons from the bodies of human beings. The learned physicians speak of this in their works. Likewise, the beasts of prey. God placed them in the world as his troops to be let loose against those that rebel against him, just as He did in the case of Pharaoh and his people. He threatened to let them loose against our people who had rebelled against Him, as we read, "And I shall send against you the beasts of the field;" \({ }^{1}\) and furthermore, "Thus saith the Lord, Verily have I sent my four severe penalties: sword, famine, pestilence and wild beasts." \({ }^{2}\) They are his troops whom he brought into the world for a good purpose: that they may become righteous. Thus it is clear, my brother, that evil was not of God's making.

Neither did falsehood originate with God. Concerning that the sages say, "We find that God created everything in His world except the quality of falsehood for the sons of man devise it in the heart." The majority of evils and sins follow in the wake of the lie, from it issue sore calamities. It is the origin and source of most of them. Thou hast learnt how God blamed the liars for persisting in their lies to the extent of denying Him. He says, "They have belied the Lord, and have said, 'He is not : evil shall not come upon us.'" \({ }^{3}\) And again, "They have taught their tongues to speak lies and weary themselves to commit iniquity." \({ }^{4}\) The sword is released on its account, as we read, "Because of falsehood (shav) did I smite your children, reproof they did not accept."s The prophets of falsehood are likewise rebuked in a number of passages. Falsehood also became one of the aggregate causes of the destruction of the Temple, as we read, "Go about the streets of Jerusalem and see . . . if ye can find a man . . . that seeketh the truth."

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) T.ev. XXVI, 22. \({ }^{2}\) Ez. XIV, 21. \({ }^{8}\) Jer. V, \(12 .{ }^{\text {T}}\) Idem IX, 4.
\({ }^{5}\) Idem II, 30. \({ }^{6}\) Idem V, I.
}

Should some one ask, "Why does God create the unright: eous, seeing that He knows in advance that they will prefer disobedience to His service, will oppress His servants and work havoc on His earth?' we answer that theology gives a number of reasons. One is that God created the wicked to be useful, but they disdained their usefulness and make choice of disobedience. Thus they injure themselves: the blame rests upon themselves not upon God, as we read, "From your own hands has this come upon you;"1 "As for their way, upon their own head I have placed it, saith the Lord God," \({ }^{2}\) in order to make manifest His wisdom. He created the disobedient that one may understand the excellence of the virtuous, that the obedient may be distinguished from the disobedient, and that man may take warning from the condition of both of thememulate the obedient and eschew the way of the disobedient. Another reason is that by means of the wicked He tests His pious servants in this mundane dwelling, as the sages of blessed memory say, "The wicked punisheth the wicked, and the Lord punisheth both of them." Finally there are various reasons why He is long suffering with them during their life time. One is that people may not say that had not God hastened to mete out punishment to a certain man but granted him a respite he surely would have repented and acted righteously. By granting him a respite God silences their apologies and reproaches. There is another reason. If a man hastens to wreak vengeance upon his enemy it is because he fears that the latter may die, become poor or that he will flee from him to another country; or he fears all this for himself, and therefore is prompted to act hastily and with dispatch and grants no respite. But it is otherwise with God, for He is free from such qualities. He does not fear death or poverty: and is not anxiously concerned about the flight and escape of the one who rebels against IIim since that man is in His hand and power, as it is written, "If a man hide himself in secret places shall I not see him? saith the Lord." \({ }^{3}\) And His saint-peace be upon Him!-said, "Whither shall I go from Thy spirit? Whither

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Mal. I, 9. \({ }^{2}\) Ez. XI, 21. \({ }^{8}\) Jer. XXIII, 24.
}
shall I flee from Thy presence? If I ascend into the heavens, Thou art there: if I make my bed in Sheol, behold Thou art there. Were I to take the wings of the dawn and alight in the uttermost parts of the sea, even there Thy hand would lead me and Thy right hand hold me. If I say, Surely darkness shall cover me, the night becomes light about me. Yea, the darkness hideth not from Thee, but the night shineth as the day: darkness and light are alike unto Thee." \({ }^{1}\) And it is further written, "If they hide themselves from my sight in the bottom of the sea, even there will I command the serpent to bite them." \({ }^{\prime 2}\)

Verily when man does right or wrong he benefits or injures not God, but himself, for it is written, "If thou be wise, thou art wise for thyself; but if thou scornest thou alone shalt bear it. \({ }^{\prime}{ }_{3}\) i. e., thou shalt bear thine own iniquity. And it is further written, "If thou sinnest what dost thou against Him; or if thy transgressions be multiplied, what dost thou unto Him? If thou be righteous what givest thou Him or what receiveth He of thy hand? Thy wickedness may hurt a man as thou art; and thy righteousness may profit the son of Man." \({ }^{4}\)

In this connection a pious man uttered a beautiful sentiment: "God created the wicked that He might manifest His generosity in pardoning them and in favoring them with forgiveness; for He takes pleasure in beneficence, grace, forgiveness and all manner of kindness. The wicked, however, are too foolish to appreciate this and are therefore delivered over to severe punishment. All this accords with what the saint declared when describing God, "He is merciful, forgiving iniquity, and does not wantonly destroy." \({ }^{5}\) His prophets said, "Who is like unto Thee bearing with iniquity, forgiving the transgression of the remnant of His inheritance?"6 God Himself says, "For I the Lord am righteous, I will not keep anger forever." \({ }^{\prime}\) We mention this because it is a beautiful utterance. Assuredly He did not form us that we should turn against Him but to have full confidence in Him. . . (Lacuna) . . . seeing that He is able to act without anyone's interference. A

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Ps. CXXXIX, 7, 12. \({ }^{2}\) Amos IX, 3. \({ }^{8}\) Prov. IX, 12.
\({ }^{4}\) Job. XXXV, 6, 8. \({ }^{5}\) Ps. LXXVIII, 38. \({ }^{\circ}\) Micah VII, 18.
\({ }^{7}\) Jer. III, 12.
}
very saintly man said, "Were you not to sin verily God would create other people who would sin and whom he would forgive to exercise His clemency." Yes, my brother, even if we were wholly righteous it would not be proper to rely upon our righteousness but upon His mercy, as it is written, "Not because of our rightcousness do we place our supplications before Thee, but in reliance upon Thy abundant mercies." \({ }^{1}\)

He who is translated from this world not lacking in knowledge and good works, agreeable qualities, pure morals, proper religious tenets, piety and chastity, has earned for himself the Dwelling of Reward and Life Eternal. One of the learned says, "In this world precedence is given to the generous; in the world to come, to the righteous." Such a one is like the newborn infant which appears in the breath of this world with limbs, organs and mechanism all complete. But one who leaves this world in a state of imperfection, ignorance and sinfulness is unworthy to share in the bliss of the Future and deserves severe punishment. He may be likened to a newborn infant that appears from its mother's womb with organs, limbs and senses that are defective. \({ }^{2}\) And even if this were to the extent of only a single member it could not make that member perfect in this world. Similarly, it avails not the sinner to cry, "Let me return to the world that I may act righteously." \({ }^{3}\)

Know, my brother,-may God help us both to attain His favor! -that the soul is the noblest entity and that God created for her this splendid temple and caused her to dwell therein. For her purposes He furnished it with all its organs and limbs, external and internal. He fashioned it for her like a populous city, she being like a monarch with absolute authority over all in the city-not a single person therein disregards what she commands or what she forbids. \({ }^{4}\) She is disciplined in the term of her residence in the body, which term her Creator has pre-ordained and at the expiration of which He sees fit to translate her to His glorious Dwelling. She is translated either happy or unhappy, according to her deserts. It is her duty to

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{2}\) Dan. IX, 18. \({ }^{2}\) Anthropologie, p. 100.
\({ }^{2}\) Koheleth Rabbah, Parasha 1, sect. 15. 'Anthropologie, p. 17.
}
conduct herself according to the divine commands, be thoroughly at home in philosophic discipline, \({ }^{1}\) nourish herself with the theological sciences, \({ }^{2}\) be purified through the spiritual sciences, be alert in the service of Heaven, imitate Divinity as far as lies in human power, then she will inhale holy forms, and be attached to the universal soul, so that light will shine upon her and she will become like a beautifully polished mirror in a dwelling amidst gardens, pleasant breezes and fragrant flowers, and the essence of the Merciful One for immortality and perfect happiness to all eternity. No power of the mind can image or conceive it-that which eye does not see, ear does not hear and which does not enter into the heart of mortal. Behold the prophets have said, "Eye hath not seen, O God, besides Thee what He hath prepared for him that waiteth for Him;"3 "How great is Thy goodness which Thou hast laid up for them that fear Thee; which Thou hast wrought for those that trust in Thee;" "Who shall ascend the mount of the Lord and who shall stand in His holy place?" "Lord who shall abide in Thy tabernacle, who shall dwell in Thy holy mount? He that walketh and worketh righteously and speaketh the truth in his heart. He that neither backbiteth with his tongue nor doeth evil to his neighbor;", "Thine eyes shall see the King in His beauty;" \({ }^{7}\) meaning the light and the essence of the King of Kings-blessed be He ! "And they that be wise shall shine as the brightness of the firmanent; and they that turn many to righteousness, as the stars forever and ever;" "Thus saith the Lord, if thou wilt go in my way . . . I will give thee companions of these who stand by."9

The illustrious and authoritative prince, Moses our master, made frequent reference to future reward and punishment. Had there not been so few in his generation capable of grasping it he surely would have unveiled the matter. Besides, the people were unrighteous of heart; for as thou hast learnt, God did not suffer any of them to remain save Joshua and Caleb. Moses, however, made frequent allusion to the subject: "The Lord

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Anthropologie, p. 97. \({ }^{2}\) Idem, p. 102; Weltscele, pp. 89, 101.
\({ }^{3}\) Is. LXIV, 4. \({ }^{4}\) Ps. XXXI, 20. \({ }^{5}\) Idem XXIV, 3. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XV.
\({ }^{7}\) Is. XXXIII, 17. \({ }^{8}\) Dan. XII, 3. \({ }^{\circ}\) Zech. III, 7.
}
commanded us to do all these statutes for our good throughorit our days, to keep us alive even as this day." \({ }^{1}\) And in many places it is said, "In order that you may live and it may be well with you." \({ }^{2}\) Furthermore, "In order that it may be well with thee and that thou mayest prolong thy days;" "In order that thy days may be prolonged;" "In order that your days and the days of your children may be multiplied." When he speaks of prolonged life he includes the eternal life of the Future World. It is also written, "And in the day of my visitation I shall visit their sins upon them;" "Is it not hidden with me, sealed up in my treasures?" That is equivalent to saying that all his days will be spent in uninterrupted bliss or in excruciating torment. Moses offered many such hints to our ancestors but they did not fully understand them. The Divine Law, the Torah, which Moses brought down, was adapted to all manner of intellects. In it are passages whose meaning is on the surface, but for the most part it consists of wondrous mysteries comprehensible only by the wise who are few in number, although even in the generation of Moses our master there were people of rationality and intellect, judgment and knowledge. To that the Book refers in the passage, "Darda \({ }^{8}\) represents the men of the generation of the wilderness who were men of science," \({ }^{\circ}\) for in that generation were Bezalel, Ohaliab and men like them : but then they were fcw and moreover of various degrees according to their endowments.

The prophets also refer to the Future Life in passages which cannot be comprehended offlhand. The like often occurs in the veracious traditions. We cite the following: "All of the prophets prophesied only with regard to the days of the messiah. As for the Future World eye hath not seen it. God alone wil! prepare it for the one who hopeth in Him;" "In the Future World there is neither eating nor drinking, but the pious sit with crowns upon their heads and derive pleasure from the radiance of the Shechinah, as it is written, 'And they saw

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) Deut. VI, 24. \({ }^{2}\) Idem V, 30. \({ }^{3}\) Idem XXII, 7. \({ }^{4}\) Idem XI, 21.
\({ }^{5}\) Deut. XI, 21. \({ }^{\circ}\) Ex. XXXII, 34. \({ }^{\top}\) Deut. XXXII, 34.
\({ }^{3}\) A wise man, one of the sons of Zerah ben Jehudah: I Kings V, ri.
\({ }^{\circ}\) Vayikra Rabbah, Parashah 9, sect. I.
}

God, and ate and drank.'" Thus, my brother, the condition of souls obedient to their Creator consists in heeding His command and keeping aloof from what He has prohibited.

Every soul that masters the whole of theory and practice, acquires the ways of the prophets and the pious, and treads in their paths, will surely achieve uninterrupted happiness unto all eternity. As for the wicked, the rebellious, those who turn against the Lord, His prophets, His saints, and His God-fearing men, who turn back from the path which leads to good works, abandon commendable habits and follow ruinous ones, such as we have mentioned in the explanation of man in the second chapter of this book-and are under the sway of accumulated ignorance ; the light of their soul gives way to darkness, and the beauty of their soul becomes obscured. She can not raise herselfbecause of the weight of her burdens. She is like unto an uneven, dusty looking mirror which does not yield to the polisher. Culture in nowise benefits her. In this world such exist in blindness, and in darkness do they wander about, according to the word of the prophets, "The wicked are silent in darkness;"" "They feel about in darkness, there is no light;" \({ }^{2}\) "In darkness he comes and in darkness he goes, and with darkness his name is covered." \({ }^{3}\) In the other world they are in an exreedingly base condition, in an extremely vile dwelling, if a most deplorable state, as it is written, "And they shall go forth and see the carcasses of those who transgress against me, for their worm does not die ;" "With the fire and the sword of the Lord shall all flesh be judged, and numerous shall be the slain of the Lord;" "For Tofteh has been prepared of old." \({ }^{8}\) Such, then, is the fate of the lost, in so far as we are able to dwell upon it.

Had it not been for the fear that our book might fall into the hands of some one that can not understand it thoroughly, one not versed in the divine ordinances, theology and phil-osophy-we would have given an explanation of the subject of reward and punishment more precise than that in this treatise, profounder than this exposition and more remarkable than

\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) I Sam II, 9. \({ }^{2}\) Job. XII, 25. \({ }^{2}\) Eccl. VI, 4. \({ }^{4}\) Is. LXV', 24.
\({ }^{5}\) Idem, 16. \({ }^{\circ}\) Idem XXX, 33.
}
these hints, based on the knowledge vouchsafed unto us by God and that which we have acquired from others. For as previously indicated, we have not given expression in this book to a single word on our own authority and have not put forth a single opinion that is original, but have learnt it all from others through the favor and goodness of God. Of Him we ask in matters religious and worldly,-His mercy, pardon, favor and the gift of His wisdom, as it is written, "For the Lord giveth wisdom; from His mouth are knowledge and understanding." \({ }^{1}\)

The book is finished, with the help of God, just as Rabbi Nathanel bar Rabbi Fayyumi wrote it.
\({ }^{3}\) Prov. II, 6.

\section*{TABLE}

Showing the corresponding paginations of the English translation and the Arabic text.



On account of the distance of the author from a centre of learning, many references could not be verified. Professor J. A. Joffa, of the Jewish Theological Seminary, has kindly supplied them.
P. 19, Yoma 86. Kel. 1, 2, 3, 4. Conf. Midrash R. Gen., parashah viii, sect. II. Mid. Shir Hashirim, parashah i, sect. 6.
P. 20, Lev. R. ch. xxxii, sect. 5. Conf. Yerushal. Pesachim, chap. x , sect I .
P. 22, Shab. 118-120; Yeb. 93a. Vayikra Rabba, parashah xxix, sect. II.
P. 23, Rashi to Chullin 53 (last line but one).
P. 24, see Talmud Shabbath I35a. See Talm. Chagigah I2b.
P. 26, Lev. xxiii, 15. Ps. cxix, 164.
P. 30, Tal. Berachoth, 28b.
P. 31, Lev. xii, 3. Tal. Succah, 48a.
P. 32, Ber. I, I-2. Meg., 2rb. R. H., 32a.
P. 37, Prov. xii, 2. Tan. to Yethro; Yalkut to Prov. xxii, 20. Aboth I. 2.
P. 38, Tal. Maccoth, 23a. Ps. civ, 24.
P. 47, Pes., 54a.
P. 48, I Sam. ii, 3. Talm. San., 92a.
P. 49, see Tal. Kethuboth, 66b; Taanit, 9a ; B. B., Io-ıI ; Pesikta Ber. xiv, 22. Ber. 17a ; Shab. 31b. Pes., 49b.
P. 50, Cf. Tal. Gittin, 43a. Tal Horayoth, 13b.
P. 5I, Ber., 6 a.
P. 52, Kid., 40a. Ber., 40a-b. Idem, 3rb. Cf. Yeb., 63b. Cf. Er., 13 b.
P. 53, Aboth de Rabbi Nathan, ch. 28.
P. 57, Cf. Ber., 17a. Cf. Kethuboth, 67b; where both opinions a:e represented.
P. 58, Cf. Baba Bathra, 10a. Cf. Berachoth, 6b; Erubin, 18b.
P. 59. Gen. xviii, 19. Idem xxvi, 22. Hos. x, 12. Gen. xxxii, II. Prov. xvi, 8. Deut. xxxiii, 21. Ps. xvii, 15.
P. 60. Cf. Tal. Arakin, 15-16.
P. 6I, Ex. xxxii, 3I. Gen. xxxix. 9. Idem iv, 3. Ps, xii, 4. Arakin, 15b. Tal. Niddah, I3a.; Shabbath, 4ra. Nedarim, 3 rb.
P. 62, Tal. Pesachim, II8b. Abodah Zarah, 36. Cf. Kethuboth, 67b.
P. 64, Is. xlvi, 4.
P. 66, Cf. Abodah Zarah. Jb.
P. 67, Tal. Taanith, I1a; Berachoth, 6Ib; Baba Bathra, 15b.
P. 70, Tal. Yoma, 38b.
P. 71, I Sam. xi 6. Cf. Shabbath. 32a.
P. 72, see Is. xxxviii, 9-19; Jonah ii, 7 .
P. 79, Tal. Pesachim, 2 a.
P. 81, Cf. Tal. Maccoth, r2a; Chullin, 92a.
P. 83 , Yalkut sect. 8, II has 13 , add to which "na," "ana" (see Der. 9a). this would be fifteen.
P. 84, Is. x1, 26. Berachoth, 18b.
P. 85, Deut. xvii, 6; Berachoth, I8b; Ez. xxi, 30. Eccl. ix, 5. See Tal. Shabbath, \(152 b\).
P. 86, Tal. Shabbath, \(152 b\) b.
P. 87, Aboth v. I : Tal. Yoma, 38b. Yoma, 87a; Sanh., II3b.
P. 89, Tal. Succah, 52b.
P. 100, "complete" or "completely unrighteous." See Is. 1x, 2I ; Idem lix, 8; Tal. Sanhed., 98a.
P. IoI, Sanhed., 97b. Is. lix, 16.
P. 104, Baba Bathra, 15b (line 2).
P. ı18, Cf. Tal. Erubin, ı3b.
P. II9, Cf. Tal. Yoma, 20 b.
P. 121, Gen. i, 31. Is. xlv, 7. Tal. Shabbath, 77b.
P. 122, Cf. Tal. Chagigah, 9a.
P. 124, Tal. Chullin, 133a; Cf. Berachoth, 28a. In Sanhedrin 7b this passage refers to the appointment of an unfit judge.
P. 125, Pirke Aboth v, 21. Cf. Tal. Sotah, 22b. Pirke Aboth v, II. Cf. Berachoth, 34b. Cf. Taanith, I6a. Jer. xii, 8. Taanith, 16b.
P. 126, Erubin, II3b. Pirke Aboth vi, 8. Cf. Orach Chayim, sect. liii, \(4,5,6,7,8\); also Taanith, 16a.
P. 127, Rosh Hashanah, 29a. Orach Chayim liii, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8. Taanith, 16b.
P. 128, Rosh Hashanah, 29a.
P. 129. Yoma, 38b; Midrash Ruth; Succah, 56b.
P. r30, Shabbath, 77b.
P. 134, Tal. Nedarim, 32b.
P. ish, Ex. xaiv, il.

\section*{בשם המרמד הדם דעת}

\section*{ליראיו}

> וםוד י"י

בכם אללה אלרחמטאן אלרחים אבתדי ובבלכאתחה אהתרי ובחדודה
אקתדי אללהם עונך ורצּאך. תבארך: אללה אלאה אסרואיא אלאלאוול קבל בל












 מנעוֹת ב אלדאת ולא מדרך באלצפאת הע׳ סב׳ ען מה יקול אלעאלמין עלווא

\footnotetext{
1 read מבוון. 2 read מבון.
}

הרים יולדו תשב אנוש ער דכא ותאמר שובו בני אדם שמו של מלך המשיח שמת

 אבדעת קבל עאלם אלאבדרע אר בהא נטק כלנאטק וסבח כל מסבח וגעל דלילה 5 עלי דאלך בראשית ברא אלהים את השמים ואת האריץ איא אי אלחרוף אלאלמלמלה מן


 אנמא הי פי דפעאת וכל ואחד מנהא יתצמן שי י פלקה אלבהארי סב' פמנהא בלא
 ויאמר אלהים יהי רקיע. ויאמר אלהים יקוו הטים. ויאמר אלהים תדשא הארין. ויאמר אלהים יהי מאורות. ויאמר אלהים ישרים יצו המים. ויאמר אלהים תוצאת הארץן, ויאמר אלהים נעשה ארם. ויאמר הלהים הנה נתתי ויאמר אלהים לאי לא טוב היות האדם לבדו. וקיל אנה ויאמר אלהים פרו ורבו. פהרה תואואן הֹי פי פי הֹי
 אליה בעון אללה סבי.
פכהא אלמבדע אלאוול פי רתבה אלואחד ואלנפם אלבלייה
 ען אלחכמה אלאלאהייה והי אלאבדאע אלאוול וגן ועדן אכני"אב בהא ען אן אלנפם 20 אלבלייה אלתאלייה לאלעקל וחי מחל אלמתובבין אלדי הם אלאנפס אלֹזוייה




 חכמה צאנעהא אנה צנעהא בחכמה מתקנה ומא צנעת נפסהא. וקד נטקת

1 reed 1 Iコス.

\section*{2}

כבירא כמא סבחה ע״ס וקאל ויברבו שם כבודך ומרומם על כל ברכה ותהלהד.
 קו מערן אלחיאה ומנבע אלציראת ואצל אלסטעהדאת ומערן אלמנבעתאת
 5 אלמבתלפאת פי אלאראצּין ואלסמאואת. אברעה אלבארי אללה סב' באמרה ומשייתה לא מן שי ולא פי שי ולא לשי ולא מע שי ולא בשי בל שא סא סב אן

 ומתחרך שברא למא וצל אליה מץ מבדעה מן אלאנעאם ובוֹאלך נטקת אלכבתב 10 אלמקדסה בקוּ י׳ קני ראשית דרפו קדם מפעליו מאו מעולם מראש



 15 נטקת בזאלֹד אלכתב אלמקדסה בקו ואהיה אצללו אמון ואהיה שעשועים יום יום משחקת לפניי בבל עת. פפאּק מן דאלך אלסרור ואלחבור ואנבעתֹת מנה אלנפם אלמלי"ה. ומן אלעלמא מן זעם אנה אנבעת מנה פי אלעאלם עקול מארחדה ותרתבת תסע מראתב באיזא אלטי אלאעדאד אלוֹי אנחהא אלאחאד וכמלת באלאבדאע אלאוול עשרה והי אלתי צדר מנהא ותנתi גמיע אלעאלם אעל מלאה 20 ואטפלה וֹעלו דלילהם עלי דהאלך בעשרה מאפמרות נברא העולם ועל עשר הדברות יעמוד העולם. ואטי אלחב' פקאלו ען אלצבר אלצאדיק שבעה דברים נבראו קודם שנברא העם ואלו הן הן תורה וגן עדן וגיהנם וכסא הכבוד ותשובה ושמו של מלך המשיח ומקום המקדש וֹאבו עלי דאלך דלאיאיל מן אלכתב

 כי ערוך מאתמול תפתה כסא הכבוד שנ׳ נכון כסאך מאו תשובא שנ׳ בטרם
 haps תלמורי.

\section*{5}






 מתי אחבת ולרבמא אכֹתארת אוֹ לא תגרב אבדא וכוֹאלאלך טאיר הלמואובב
 10 אלאیשי"א עלי מא עאינאהא לם תחרך מסורת 2 ולא תתחוול ען טבאעהא ולא תתניר ען מא הי עליה מן קדים אלומאן עלמנא ותיקננא אנהא מכלוקה


 15 ומסיר אלבואבב אלמכתלפה אלחרכאת עלי מא סנרבר טרפה מן דאלך פי פצל הוֹי אלבהאב אן שא אלאלה תע.

 מנהא ערדא אלי אוֹ תנתהי אלי אלעלה אלואואדה באלערד אלדי יעוד אלי


 בישי עלי מה תקדם אלכלאם פּ אוול אלכתאב. פכבאן אלמבדע פב' מעל

 באליצאנע גל גלאלה מן חיז אמתבעת אלאיצישא לם חצנע הי נפסהא צח לנא



\section*{4}

אלכתב אלמקדםה בקו״ מח רבו מעשיךה י״ וכו וקאל י״ בחכמה יסד אריץ בונו שמים בתבונה. וכה; אלאנםאן אכר אלמצנועאת והו עאהלם סגיר ואכר כיפי״


 עאלם סגיר יואון אלגי אלעואלם אלדי תקדמחה באלכון והו אללטיף ואלספםיף







 15 עגלהא אללה עז וגלופי אבטאלגסך אמלתורייהבאלדלאיל אלעקלייה ואלשרעייה ואלסמעי״ה ואלעבראנייה ואלערבייה במא פיה כפאיה. ואלפצל אלן פי וֹכר



 י"׳ ומי צור הולתי אלהינו פקול אלחכים יא מן חסמא בבל אשם והו עלי חאלה
 ואיאנא ברוח מנה אה הוֹי אלבאב הו אצל אלעלום ואלאדיאן ואלמדארב


 גמיעהی אעלאהא ואספלהא דקיקהא ואלילהא באנת מעדומה קבל ונודהא פאוֹדהא גירהא וכוונהא סואהא ורתבהא עלי מא הי עליה הלאן ומלבהא
 אלעאלמין ואצדק אלצאדקין ואקדר אלקאדרין ואחכם אלחאכמין מעל עלה


 עלמה והו אלסטיע אלעלים אללטיף אלכביר אלראוף אלרחים. פסבחהן מן הרֹה אלקדרה קדרתה והדֹה אלמשייה משייתה. פקד כלת בלת אלאללםן ען



 אלמוגודאת מנקסמה אלי אלעקול 2 שריפה ואנפס לטיפה ואפ ואגראם כמּיפה

 15 או תחיט בה אלאפההאם וכיף יפהם אלמבדע במבדעה ואלמלתריע במלתרעה מן גיר מנאסבה תסוקה אליה או מצאנטה תזאנס בהא עליה פלא יחויה וקת ולא יחיט בה בעת פכנה תוחידה אן לא לא יתוהם וקעה ואן לא לא מלא

 20 ואפווץ אמרי אליה כקול ולייה עם והבוטח הסד יסובבנה4 וקאל להיוח בי" מבטחו הודעתיך היום גם אתה. תם אלפצל אלאוול ויתלוה

\footnotetext{
 יסובבנו.
}

6





 ומכתלפה ואלכל מתקן באלחכמה אלאלאהייה ואלצנעה אלרבאני"ה בעאלי
 ואחד לדאתה לא כאלאחאר חכים לֹאתחה לא כאלחכמא חי מוגוּ אואל באקי 10 דאים אלוגוד מן גיר אזלייה אפאצּהא מן סואה ולא חיאה אוֹא אסתפאדהא מן גירה ולא חכמה אכתסהא 1 מן חכים אכר או מוגדם אואדדה בל הו מעםי


 15 ולא תשבהה וכיף ישבה אלמללוק בכאלקה ואל מברע במבדעה תע אללד עו וגל ען דֹאלך עלווא פבירא.
 סנדבר מן אלתוחיד עלי מא יחתמלה אלמוצע מן אלכלאם אן שׁא אללה אוֹ בֹֹאלך אמרנא ובסבבא 2 אוצינא ולמערפתה אנשינא. וקר ערפנא
 וקאל שמע ישראל. וקו ראו עתה כי אני אני הוא אני אני אמית ואחיה. וקוי למען ידעו ממזרח ער מערבה כי אפס בלעדי אני ״״ וכזיר מן זֹאלך אלכתב אלנבוייה אלמנולה תשהד באנה סב' ואחר אלזאת ברי ברי ען אלצפאת
 25 אל ומה דמות תערכו לו. וקוי אל מי תדמיוני ואשוה ותמשיקוני ואדמה

 1 read אכתסבהא. 1 . 2 read ובסבבה.

 אלֹארבה ואלמאסבה ואלהאצממה ואלדאפעה ואלנאמייה ואלגאואדבה ואלמולדה







 ואלכתאבה פיהמא מן אלסמא ובא׳יא תורה ומשנה ובאיזא אלדניא ואלאכרדה.


 בצפה והו ذאלק אלוחדה ואלואחד פמא אמבן אלנטק אן ינטק באלטף מן דאלך.

 20 וברד וחרס וביאר ועלמא וגהאל וטיב ונהן וֹתקל וכפה וכשונה וליץ וצלאבה

 ווער ונחם וסעאדה ופרקה ואגתמאע וסם ותריאק ולאדם ומذרום וגיר לאלך


 ואלגום ואלחרבה ואלסבון ואלדכול ואלذרוא ואלקיאם ואלקעוד ואלבלאם ואלצמשח


\section*{8 \\ אלפצל אלבי}
 פלך אלקמר. קאל ולמא כאן אלאנם אלאן אכר אלמצנועאת וענדה וקפת אלצמנעה


 אלמוגודאת מן גמאד ונבאת וחיואן וקד נטקת בלֹאלך אלכתב אלמקדסה בקוֹ ותחסרהו מעט מאלהים תמשילהו במעשה ידיך וג' צנה ואלפים כולם בלם


 תע׳ לתחתאר עצמתחה פי קלובנא ולנעבדה חק עבאדתה. וקד נטקת אלכבתב



 אלכבד והי יגאנס ארואח אלבהאים. ואלבי אלקווה אלגיצבייה אלחי מסבנהא אלקלב והי חצאנס ארואח אלגן. ואלג אללקווה אלנאטקה אלעאמלה

 ואלסודא. פטביעת אלדם חאר רטב באיאו טביעח אלהוא. וטביעת אלֹבלגם
 טביעת אלנאר וטביעת הלסודא בארדוֹ" יאבסח באיזא טביעת אלתראב.
 25 וחאםה אלשם וחאסה אלדוק וחאסה אללמס, וכדאאלך לח וֹ גחהת באיאא
 5 read מרכבא.



 5 והי פי חלול אלחמל ואלסרטیאן ואלמיאואן ואלגדי עלי מרור אלומשא. ואלממאן 7

 בלג אלעלום אלצהאהרה ולם יבלג אלעלום אלבאטנה ומנהם מן וקף עלי



 ראיחהה וטעם באלאתרנג ומנהא מן ליס לה לא רא ראיחה ולא טעם טעם באלצפםצאף.

 יולד צאלח 2 קאל פיה תחת הנעציץ יעלה ברוש וטאלח יולד טהאלחה קאל פל פיה





 והי אלחרארה אלדףי פי באטן אלארדץ ונאר תאכל ולא תלוּ תרב והי אלנאר
 25 ואלנבאת ואלחיואן ואלמלאיכה פמן אלמעארן אלבון ואלפסאר מתל אלת אלמעארן ומן אלנבאת אלנדֹא ואלנמו מתל אלנבאת ומן אלחיואן אלחס ואלחרכהת מתל מלת אלחיואן ומן אלמלאיכה אלעבאדה ואלחיאה אלדאימה פארי עבד אללה חק

\footnotetext{

}

 ואלעפה ואלקחה ואלחסד ואלעבאדה ואלצלף ואלחריא ואלקניאעה ואלשרה וארה ואלקווה ואלעגו ואלפצאחה ואלאנקטאע ואלגוע ואלשבע ואלעטש ואלרוא 5 אלמגיב ואלחצור אלערי ואלאסתזהیר אלדם ואלשכר אלעי ואלוֹכא אלגצּב
 ואלעםה אלרדםם ואלציאנה אלתצייע ואלחפּץ אלמעצייה ואלטאעה אלופם אל
 ואלכפר אלחלם ואלבטש אלשך ואליקין אלמערוף ואלמנכר אלאוּוּ ואלאממאן

 אלאנצאפּ ואלגדר אלרגבה ואלרהבה אלעכם ואלסמאחה אלרכאוהו ואלשדה

 15 ואלֹמלה סו אלذלק וחםן אלכלק פדאאך ק״מ כלק ללאנסהן יקדר יסתעמל כלק אלכל פי מצּצעה.
וכדאאך באיזא אלגי חי נאטק מית ופיה ג׳ שרכא אלֹאלאק סב' וואלדיה.
 ג' אבות אברהם יצחק ויעקב ובאיזא ג' עולמות ישאדם רואה אחד במש במעי אמו 20 ואחד העולם הזה ואחר העולם הבא. ובאיזא ג' ספרים שנפתחהים במרום לפני הקב״ה אחד של צדיקים ואחר של בינונים ואחר של רששעים של צדיקים נכתבים ונחתמים לגן עדן ושל רשעים נכתביץ ונחתמיץ לגהנם ושל בינונים תולין להן עד
 לויים וישראלים. ובאיזא תורה נביאים וכתובים. ובאיזא ריוסא אלעאלם ומרב ורברה. 25 ובאיזא נביא וחכם ומלך. ובאיזא ג' קדושות. ובאיזא אלעלום אלג׳ עלם אלאדיאן ולאן ועלם אלאבדאן ועלם אלאזמאן ואלאמאן מאצּי וקאצּי ומסתקבל. וכדאלך אלר אלד
 עלם ומנהם מן לה אלעלם ואלעמל ומנהם מן לא לה לא עלם ולא עמל וקר קאל

\section*{13}

ואבני אלגביש אשׁ וגפרית וארבעת שפטטים רעים חרב ודבר ורעב וחיה רעה ארבע מרכבות וארבע חרשים. וכדאהך אלכואכב עלי ארבעה צלרוב מנהא מא


 נארייה וג' הואייה וג' מאייה וג' תראבי"ה. ואלמא עלי ד' צ'רוב מא יצעד מן אלארץץ אלי הלהוא והו אצל אלמטר ומא ינזל מן אלהוא אלי אלאריץ
 דאימא והו מא אלבחר מלזון כקו כונם כנד מי הים. ואלנבאת עלי ד צ צוּוב
 דוא באלסבר ואלאדהאן ומא שאבלהם ומנהא מא הו דוא לא גלוא באואלה ואלילא

 ובאיזא חמישה קנ״ינים שיקנה הקב״ה בעולמו. ובאיזא אלהי אלצלאואת 15 אלתי פי יום צום כפורים וכדֹאלך אלהת אלחואם אללי פי אלאנטאן ואלא חרוד אלעלוייה ובאלגמלה אן צורה אלהח פי אלאעדיאר לא תנתקל ולא תתנייר עמא



 וסתה גאיבה אבדא תחת אלארץץ וסתה גנוביה וסתה שימאאליה ופּ נאחיה



 ענד אללה תע' ותשריפה לה ותקדיסה א׳אה לאנה טאבע אלא׳אם ואלרהא
 .וסת צהאת אלעאלם delete 2 , ובאלנהאר והו אלקמר

12
עבאדחה כאוֹ לא ימות וכרֹאלך גנום אלעלם דר אלאוול אלריאצי״את
 הלעקלייאת. ואלראבע אלנאמוסייאת אלאלאדייאת.
 5 ד׳ אשיא. פאלבסיטה אלנאר ואלהוי ואלמא ואלתרואב. ואלמרכבאת אלמעאחן

 ואלמרתין אלממאוֹ להם אלחרארה ואלרטובה ואלברודה ואליבוסה. פאלפתת לדאלך האלעלמא כתב טביה פּ אלאסתעמאל עקאקיר יטול שרחהא ויתסע 10 עלמהם אלי גיר חד. פקאבלהא באיזא ד' אצול לעלל אלנפס יחרת מנהא

 צלא אללה עליהם אלתי הם אטבא אלאנפם ושרחהוהא פי כתבהם ארמוחא בהא בהא אליהם מן אללהה סבי. ואמא אלאהצול אלתי לעלל אמראּץ אלנפום פהי



 דאלך וטאל מא וצפה מתלא קו יש נוחליץ ומנחילין מנחילין ולא נוחלין נוחליץ 20 נלא מנחילין לא מנחילין ולא נוחלין. ומתל קוּ ארבע מרות בנותני צדקחה. ארבע




 ופישון וחדקל ופרת. ומתלהא בנמלים שפנים ארבה סממית. וכדאלאך ארבע
 ;לעפות ופי לעתיד לבוא יפרע מהם בארבע פורעניות והם גשם שוטף

\section*{15}
 אללה סב' אעתברנא אחואל אלעיבור אלדי לבני אסראיאל לסנינהם ואיאעיארהם וציאמאתהם אלמשרועה עליהם פי אלחורה ומא נקל אליהם באלֹבבר אלצמדיק ען
 5 כיפורים ולא זבר פורים בעד אלדחיות מרסומה מן חאכמהם אלקדמא וארואח
 וף מעוברות ולאלך סוד העיבור ואצלה ומדכלה גמיעה לאלד לאהר בלה וסנעמל

 10 אלתופיק ברחמתה סבי וכדֹאלך ועד אללה סב' באקאמת ז' רועים על עמו ישר פחנוך זף לאדם וכאן אלסייד אלמניר משה בן עמרם ע״ה ז' מן אברהם




 הגדול. וכדֹאלך אלסמאואת ק והם רקיע ואילוֹ וחבול ומבון ומעון צהחקים וערבות.


 ״ח אבות שכבו בכבור העולם ולא שלטה בהם רמה וכֹאהלך סבב אללתה

 עלמת ובלעם ערך '| מזבחות ועל המנורה ז' נרותיה וסליחה ומחילה בתשּרי


 כמאלהם אלי בית אלמקדם חֹ אלאסאביע ואמרחם אוֹ יסתذדמו עבידהם
 הק מערפתה אקארה כמא אמרת אלשריעה מע תקוי אללתה סב' פקר במל דינה

 5 ואלמאכבה ואלהאצממה ואלדאפעה ואלנאמייה ואלמרבי"ה ואלמצוורה ואלדי











 אלשאמה פי אלמנذריץ ומגרא אלקווה אללאמסה פי אללידין ומגרא אלאקווה




 פי אלארץץ ? אקאלים וה' וכ' בקעה וכוֹאלך מן פצּילת 1 אלסבע ענד אלללה 25 סב' געל אלטפל אלמולוד לסבעה אשיהר יעיש ואבן אלחה ימות. עעלי אנה צאיד שהר ולאלך לאסראר לא יעלמהא אלא אלאל אלתה סב' או אנביאה אלדי אעלמהם איאהם ואלראסذון פי אלעלום אלדי תוארֹוהא ענהם וופקוהא אליה 1 read

דפעתין קבל אֹ תקרא אל א״ם והי שמעע ווהיה אם שמע וויאמר פפיהא גמיעה - ט פּצלא בער אסקאט אחר אלפצליץ אלמרדדין והו ובחבתם ומתל מא

 5 נדכרה הי אלפסוק אלֹּי פי אذר אלתורה והי אذר מא אלף אלםייד אלמניר
 ב' יכ' הו אוֹאלתורה אסתבדת בחרף בית ולתמת בחרף כאף והו בראישית


 אללטיפה ואכתר מן מעאנייהא ומא תחההא מן מעארף לתפחוח ותנאל אלנעים
 ברחמתה.
 15 אלאוולה אלדי עדו פואסיקהא מן ויושע אלי י״ ימלוך י״ט ומתל אלפואסיק אלדּ בארך בהא אלסייד יעקב אולארה מן ראובן אלי יוסף בפואסיק زמלתהא ח״ט


 20 באשׁאראת וגמל 1 אלאספאר פּאן אֹּי חסבת הרי עסר וחדהא יבקא ב' פי






 1 read בib.



 5 ק| ברכות וענהא יקול ולייה שבע ביום הללתיך ופי אלערם ק' ברכות וֹ ימי חופה

 כי שבע יפול צדיק וקם וקאל ושבע ילין בל יפקר רע בי שבעתים יקם קין ואלסייר










 20 יקדרו יזידו ולא ינקצו וכרֹאלך אלי״ב אלשהר והי תנטוי אבד אלאבדין בלא כל כלל





 אלגי אלפצול אלתי מן אלתורה אלתי עלינא לאומה קראתהא פּ בל בליום


אלאמה כאנה 1 תלחן בה לחח פי בית המקרש והי על הישמינית וישמונה אבות
 אעתברת אלמתבקי בעד אלטופאן תנֹד דאלך ח' פהם נח וזוֹתה וג' בניה וג'
 5 ואלצפם ואלאלד ואללחם ואלשחם ואלדם ואלמך ואלעצצם ואלעצבב. וכדהאלר


 987654321 וצלילה כת 10 פהדה צוירהא מתל דאלך ותך' תצוור הרה אלצוור והי
 5 54321







 מאמרות עשרה נסים נעשו לאבותינו במצרים ועשרה על הים עשר מכות הביא הקב״ה על המצרים במצרים ויימון בעשרה וקדושה בעשרה איז קורו מורין בתורה
 לעתיד לבוא שנ' ביום ההוא יושר השיר הזה וט' םפירות נמנו ישראל ואל ואלי

 גרלת מאד הוד והדר לבשת ואלב י" מלך גאות לבשש ואלג' לבש י" עח התאור

\footnotetext{
1 read באנת.
}

\section*{18}

 ידכלו אלגנה ולו כאן קצדה לאלך לֹאהאך למא טאבקה אחר עליה מן דוי אלעקול




 אלמוגודאת פאוֹי צח ללאנםאן לאלך וערפה ווחר ונזה אסתחק אוֹ ידכל










 וסנדכר מנהא מא אמבן מן אלמתבקי פּ מוצעעה מן אלפצל אלֹאמס אן שא אל אללה תע' ובאללה אלתופיק.
 השמיני אלדי אעל בפני עצמו רגל בפני עצמו זמן בפני עפי עצמו וכדוֹאלך שמונה
 ובה כלק אללה אלעאלם כקו כי ביה י״ צור עוקמים וכקו בה בהבראם אל תל תקרא בהבראם אלא בהי בראם שנ' בדבר ״י שמים נעשו. ולאלח איצא פצּילה והו אן


\section*{21}







 אסתדללנא בה בקו תמשישליהו במעישה ידיך בל שתה תחת רגליו. וגעל נהכה

 חק עבאדתה ותלתזם לה גֹמעע מא יריד אוֹ ילזמהא אלללה לה עבאדה מן אלמלך





 אیשר בחרתי למען תרעו ותבינו כי אני הוא לפני לא נוצר אל ואחרי לא יה יהיה. 20 ואמא לילתזמו לה אלחקוק אלואנבה במא ילתממו אלעביד למולאהם כקו' בעיני



 25 מחבה ללה סב' פי קצאאיה לא רגבה מנהם לתכלצו בל והבונפוסהם לה טב' טחבה פיה ואסתסלאם לקצּאיה בנפוס טייבה ונייה כאלצה פלמא עלם סב כינהם חסן

1 read פמערפה פלצלא. 2 lacuna of about tow lines. 4 read רוחאני".

\section*{20}

ואלר חף הויח צר ער די כרסון רמיו ועתק יומין יתיב לבושה, בתלג

 ״"גליות גלו ישראל די בימי סנחירוב וד' בימי נבוכדנצר וב' בימי טיטוס 5 ואספטינוס ועדו לעתיד לבוא בי״ב אסמא אלֹדי הי בַלָה בַלָה וֹהאלך ... 1 מלבנון כלה קול ששׁוח קול שמחה קול חהן קול כלה כול .. 2 וג׳ ומשוש חתן על כלה כחתן יבהן פאר וככלה וג'.


 באטן אלארץץ. ובטנה מנאטב לענצר אלמא במא פיה מן אל אלסמך אלמכתאלפה


 15 מנאסב לענצר אלנאר אלעאליה. וכדֹאלך פיה שער לא יחצ יחא ערדה כמא פּי




 וכלאלך פיה אמיא מכתלפה אלטעום מאלחה פי עיניה וחלוה פי פמשה ומנתנה
 כֹאאלך מכתלפה אראדת \({ }^{6}\) אלצאנע אלחבים תקדסת אסמאיה לאנהא חכמה מתקנה וקיל אן מלוחת 7 מא אלבחר לעיש אלח מלחיואן חואליה לאנה לו כאן חלו 25 למרצּת אלחיואן אוֹ אלובא לאבן מליחתה תטרד אלובא וכוֹאלך מלוהת אלעייץ לאנהמא שחמחין פלולא אלמלוחה פיהמא לעמיא לאן אללחם

1 lacuna of a line and a half. 2 lacuna of half a line, 3 read אמוק. 4 read צגיר. 6 read מאלחה, 6 , 6 read 6 read

אליהוה מן סאיר אלשרע ופי אלעולם "אואלאנסאן. וכדֹאלך הלה אללשריעה חמשה







 10 קר דברנא מנהא מא אמבן, ובדֹאלך אל״ אלל אלישרע עשרת הרברות והי תגמעו
 חרופהא תֹריך חרפא מע מא ינצ'אף מץ אלמעשראת פי אלשרע ואלעאלם ואלאנטאן.

 מה רבו מעשיך ״״ כולם בחבמה עישית וקאל ״״״ בחכמה יסר אריץ כו׳ שמי בתי. פסבחאנה ذאלק אלבל מנשייה ומרברה אחמרה ואیשברה ואתוובל עליה ואפווחץ
 ינהלני. כמל אלפצל אלב' פצל אלאנסאן עאלם טגיר 4 יתלוה הלפצל אלגי
פי אלתזאם אלטאעה ללה סב' קאל אנה למא צח במראכרחתא אוֹאן אלאנסאן אפצל אלמוגדראת תחת פלן אלקמר ואנה כליפה אללה סבר פי עאלמה ואנה פנה סלטה עלי גמיע אלמוֹודאת מן אלמעארן






\section*{22}

אליקין ואן מא פעלחם להאך למגוה ולא לרגבה ולא לרדבה פנצאחתם במא שא

 האנאהר באלמנגליק פקאל הלעאהלי אלאעלא תקדסת אסמאיה לגבריאל אסאל 5 אבראהים פי אלהוא הל לה חאגה תקצידא לה פסאלה פי אלהחא הל לך חאגה
 נאר כוני ברד וסלאם 1 עלי אברי פלו קאהל ברדוא ואמסך לאהלכבה אלברד פסבי מנגי אוליאה ואתקיאה אלמסתבניץ אליה לא יחן לעולם מוט לצדיק וקאל לא ישישיא אויב בו ובן עולה לא יעננו אחמדה והאשכרה ואפווץ אמרי אליה כקולוליה ברוד
\[
10 \text { הגבר אשר יבטח בי״ והיה י״ מבטחו. }
\]

וכוֹאלך יה אמּי צעל אללה דינה אלבאהר ויאהר אלאחהר עלי מתל עאלמה.
 יהיה לבם. וכדאּלך צאר מכחוב ומנקול באיזא אלבי לקי אלחכמי קול שתי תורות נחנו לישראל אחת בכתב ואחת שלא בכתב ושרע לאלך עלי ידיד אחננין 15 משה ואהרן ואמלת אלדברות בשני לחוחת הברית ולדאלר באיאוא אלגי חורה
 נביאים וכחובים נמסרו לשלשה משה ואהרן ומרים ויש אומרין פולא נמסרו למשה ששׁמו שלש אותיות כנגד השם. וקיל אן איצא גמלה אלאשרע מעקול ומבחיב ומנקול, ובדאלך אלאמה ג' מראתב כהנים לויים וישראלים. וכדאלך ג ג קדושות
 על שלשה דברים העולם קים על הדין ועל האמת 2 ועלחשלום. וכדאאלד אלעאלם יתכת בג׳ אלעלם ואלעטל ואלקרא אללציר ואילאה והו קו על שלשה דברים העולם עומד על התורה ועל העבודה ועל גמילות חסדים.ומן שאר מצוות קאלו צריך אדם לומר בתוך ביתו ערב שבת עם חשיכה עשרתם ערבתם הדליקו את





לذסר כלאמה רחמה אללה לבן לנוכד אלאמר פי אלתוחיד ופי אלעבאדה או אל

 אלרשאר אן הוּי אלבאב סר מן אסראר אלבאראי תבארך ותעי ועלם גליל 5 אלמקראר ולא ימסה אלא אלמטהרון ולא יגב בשיפה אלי כל ואחד אלא אללי מן
 ציאנה אלעלם וחפצּה אביאת שער כף אלרחמאן יא מן נאל עלמי ולא תבדה


 כלאמהם אלי מעאני צחיחה מא אכתלפו פיהא וראלך אנהם עללו אלמוגדואת מן מעאדן ונבאת וחיואן אלי די אלאמהאת אלתי הי אלתראב ואלמא ואלהוי
 אן אלנאר אעלאהא ויתלוהא ענצר אלחוי אלמתוסט ביץ אלמה ואלאנאר 15 פטביעתה חארה רטבה פכאנה 1 אלחרארה 2 אלתי פיה מן מלאורורתה טרפח

 לאלתראב. פבאנת אלנאר אעלאהא והי חארה יאבסה מן מלאורתהא לחרכה
 20 פכאנת אלד אלאמהאת אלמדבורה מעלילה באלפלךך ואלבראהין עלי צחת 3 דאלאך
 מעלול באלהיולא ואלצורה אנבֹת מק אלנפם אלכלייה ווֹאלך זו אלעקול אלמזרד
 הו פיהא מן אלנור וסעארה וחרכה ובקא. וכדאלאך אלאפלאך נקישת מלת ממא 25 אכתסבתה מן אלעקול אלמזרדרה פי עאאלם אלטביעה פצארוה 4 אלנפס אלבלייה מעלולה באלעקל אלוֹי הו עלה אלעלל אלדי אבדעה אלבארי סבחאנה במשייחה ואראדתה ואמרה לא לשי ולא פי שי עלי מא דֹכרנא פּ אוול אלכתאב. פתנזח 1 read פכאנת. 2 read צמארת 2 . 4 . 4 read \({ }^{3}\) read

\section*{24}

ואלנעמה אלבאטנה אלנפם אלשריפהּ אלוֹי אנעם בהא עליה והו צוהרה בסיטה

 אללה תע' ואחר בל זאת יצרת אדם לכבודיך, ובראת אנוש אוש קורא בוּ בשמיך ונפחת 5 באפו נישמה יקרה וברה זכה וחפה מחבמת ומשבלת תולקת 1 מוסר חכמה ולומומת דעת ומזימה מגדת כי אתה יצרתה ומעידה בי אתה ברו ומתה בוּ בה, ישכיל כל חכם לב ויבירך וממנה יתבונן אנוש תבונה וימצצהך כי אתה שמת למתה לאות ולמוּת לאננשי לבב בחוקם ונחתה לער ממהר למבוני מדע בנפשותם כי אם יכו יכוב בך מבזב או יכחש בך מכחש כאבן מקיר תצעק נישמתו וכבפיר מעין תענה רוחו למן 10 בלבוחם ישבילוך בל מבקשיך ובאקי אלקול מן דאלך עלי אלאנסצוּ בעד אלשבר




 חרף פעדרהא מנהא רֹמחֹ בעדר איברים באלאנסאן והי אמר ומנהא שׂסה ודי נהי בעדד ערוק אלאנסאן ואלטאעה אלבאטנה עבאדה באטוה באנה באלפברה



20 בכל לבבך והשבות אל עבבך.

 במא קדר עליה וגעל אלעאלה 3 אלקצוי פי אלתוחיד אלי עלה אלעלל וקאל אנה






אֹחדת ועטלת והדי לא יםעך ועלי אן קר אסתדל מן קאל בהּדה אלמקאלה אלתי


 5 כוצצא עצימא פמנהם מן קאל אליסת באערף מן אלאנביא אלאדי סמו אללה באלאסמא אלזי קר סמוה בהא ונאגוה בהא ולם יעלמו אוֹ אלאנביא להם


 10 ומעאני יצחהו מא קאלו ולא אתו אליה בברהאן צחיח אלא תמוֹ תמויה 1 ומנגאלטא. ומנהם קן קאל אוֹ אלבארי סב' ذאטב אלנאים מו חיֹת בלג עלמהם ותסמא להם באסמא מצאי״יה עלי קדר אפעאלה תב' ותע' פענד אלחא.. 2 אמלי ..מתה \({ }^{3}\) רחום




 פאן נאגינאה סב' ווצפנאה באלאסמא ואלצפם פת אלתי וצי וצף בהא דאתה עלי אידי אנביאה פלא פגנאח עלינא והוֹי עזו וקבל מנהם אוֹ לים פי 20 וסעהא סואה.

 כאלפרך באלביצּה פליס תקדר תעבר בארייהא סב חק עבאדתה אלא מלא תנזהה חק
 25 ואלפסאר פהי לא תקדר תנטק אלא בלסאן ולא תבצר אלא בעין ולא תלו תסטע אלא
 ואלחוחיד אלחקיקי ואלתניה ואלתאלד מוגודין פיהא באלקוווה פארקת אלאם בר

\footnotetext{

}

\section*{26}


 מכאן ומא תקדם הנאך אללהם למכלוק מע אבדאע אלעקל פיעלם ביף בנה בנה דאלך

 גאיה אלכמאל ואלתמאם ואלחיאה אלדיאימה ואלםעאדה אלאבדייה נצר אלי מלי
 חיאה קאימה באלפעל פי גאיה אלתמאם ואלכמאל פטלבת אלתשבה בעלתהא

 ואלברכאת וטרף תמד בה מא כאן דונהא פּ פּ הלרחבה מן אלאנור ואלבקא




 אלתוחיד באיֹאו ומא כלף אללה נפס \({ }^{4}\) אלא וסעהא ופוק כל די עלם עלים.




 25 ולאבן כל אסם לא יקע אלא עלי מסמא וכל מסמא מפעול עלי ראי אהל אלמנטק תע׳ אללה ען דאלך עלווא כבירא פּצחת יא אכי אוֹ נטקת גסמת ואן צמתת

1 read צפה. 2 read 2 read 4 read


יסתרذו בהא גלצהם ויסתרֹעו בה מן אלמעאצי יסמא אלתובהו ופתח להם


 5 אלמקרםה בכון דאלך פּי אוול אלכליקה במא דכרנא פּ פּ קול אלחכמים ק״ל פּ שבעה דברים שנבראו קודם שנברא העולם וכאנת אלתובה אחרהם. ואלדליל
 פי אוול אלכתאב ולהּי אלמעני סר עצ׳ים ולא יצל עליה אלא אלעלמא וראוֹאח

 עצימה לנא ולאולאדנא ולאכואנא ופק אללממיע אלי טאעתה ונעוד בער לאלך אלי שרח מא נקדר עליה מן פנון אלתובה ושרוטהא ופנונהא ולאחקהא אוֹ שׂא אללה תע.



 אלתורה כי יודע אלהים כי ביום אכלכם וג' וקאל פי אלכתובים יורע ״״ ימי תמימים וקאל פי אלנביאים ואומר ״י אלהים אתה ידעת וכֹתיר מתל הרֹי 20 ואשבאהה. פאלעלם אשרף אלאשישיא באֹמעהא חתא ליס ענד אהל אלדניא אשרף מן אלֹדהב ואלגואהר. פוצנף הלעלם אנה אשרוף מנה כקוי יקרה היא מפפנינים וכל



 לא מן שי אנמא תפר דבה אלי אלذאלק סב' ותב' כקוּ לא ירע אנוש ערכה ולא ולא חמצא בארץ החים אלהים הבין דרכה. סבחאן אלעאלם באלאשיא קבל כונהא

1, read אטול מן אלאריץ ואערץץ מן אלבחר 2 , 2 read

וקר הי כאמלה מרצייה צארת מלבא באלפעל וצארת תנצר בכלהא ותסמע בכלהא ותנטק בכלהא מן גיר אלה תסחעמלהאה. וקר ויצף אלבתאב אלמלאיכה מהל דאלך אד קאל ובנותם מלאות עינים סביב לארבעתם וחניד חצח מנהא אלעבארה אלחקיקיה ואלתסביח ואלתקרים ואלתהליל מע אלממרבין אבד אבדין 5 ודחר אלדהרין וראלך אסתחקחה אלנפם פּ דאר אאלדניא באלעלם ואלעםל ואלתזאם מא زאת בה אלאנביא טאראחבאטנא 1 בגיר שך ולא ריא ולא ולא חת
 ועלי אi הלעבאדה לאלריבה פ' אלנעים אלמקים ואלרחבה מן אלעראב אלאלים

 הרב על מנת לקבל פרס אלא היו בעבדים המשמשין את הרב על מנת 3 שלא לקבל פדם ויהי מורא שמים עליכם. וקאל בעץ הלעלמא פּ דאלך אביאת אלאה

 15 אלאפתֹארר. וקאל אכר וחקך לא נצרת אלי סואכה בעין מחבה חתי אראכא בלגנא ואיאכם אעלא אלדריאחת פי אלדין ואלדניא ואלאכרה ואלאולא אוא אנה סאמע אלרעא במנה ולטפה אסתגפר אללה ואתוב אליה ואסתעין בה ואתוכל עליה ואפורץ אמרי אליה כמא נאאאה ולייה ע״ס וקאל ״י״ לי לא אירא מה יעשה לי אדם וקאל "' רעי לא אחסר בנאות דשא ירביצני. חם אלפצל אללג בעו אללח 20 ואמרה פב' פי אלחזאם אלטאעה לאח ועבאדתה יתלוה אלפצל אלד

 אלסדאר והדאנא אלי אלרשאר אן אללה תב ותעי למא סבק פּ עלמה אן בֹתיר 25 מן אלאגם יוֹרון מעצייחה עלי טאעתה. פיסתחקח אלעלאב אלאלים ואלעקאב

 5 read ithisol.
 ואלבשר מן אלחיואן ואלמלאיבה מן אלאגן והו סבי אלמנזה מן אלאישבאה






 10 והו אלקרד ופי אלפרס חס ליס הוא פּ סואה מץ אלחיואה ופי אלפיל האיצא מוֹ קבול


 ורצת אלאנבייא אושרף אלמכלוקיץ מיץ אלנאס פהם פי אלדניא מלאיכה באלקוחוה

 פסבחהן ذאלקה ומנצישיה ומרברה ובאריה כמא שא וכיף שא והו אלתלם אלעאלמין.
נעוד אלי מא כנא פטיה מן אמור אלתובה ונקול אֹא אלעלמא קד חדרו חדוד 20 אלתיבה ומעאנייהא ואטבאבהא וגעלו להא דף חדוד עלי מא ביינה 6 שי פי כתבהם




 לטף אלבארי סב' או לא יכתבה עליה. פסב' אללטיף בעבאדה ארך אפים ורב

1 read גלת 2 . 2 read 3 read 3 and so in the two



 ומאלה פי אלבחר פעלמה באקי ואלמאל אדי והבת מנה נקץ ואלעל ואלם מא ינקץץ. 5 ואלמאל ארי פרקתה גמיעה אפתקרת ואלעלם אלֹדי פרקתה לם תפתקר בל תותאד וכדֹאלך כואין אלאמואל פנת וכזאין אלעלם בקת, וקיל אלעלם ואן באנת





 אסתאדוטול ממאני2.וקיל אלעלם ואלד ואלעמלמולור וקיל אלעלם שגרה ואלול ואלעמל



 וקאלו אלחכמים הלמד על מנת ללמד 5 מספיקין בידו ללמוד וללמד ולעישוח.
 20 ויצוינוי״ לעשות וכֹיר מן להאך פי אלתורה ואלכתובים ואלנביאים. ופּ מחבת \({ }^{6}\) אלעלם קאל אלשאער אלפאה" שלמה הקטן איך אעווב חכמה ורוח אל כרחה
 מן אלעלמא תעלם פלים אלמר יכלק עאלמא ולים אכֹא עאלם כל מן כאן גאהל
 25 מן אלעלם בדוּ 7 בל יך' נציבך פי עלו קדמתה אלאואיל ולנד דכר שרף אלעלמא מא אמבן. אעלם יא אכי איידך אללה ואיאנא ברחמתה אן אלכאלק תע' געל לבל
 ברין 6 tead 6 .לעשות. 7 .מתבה.

מא אקול פי דאר אוולהא ענה ואכרהא פנא חלאלהא חסאב וחראמהא עקאב



 אוליאה פיהא אלגנה בהא אלרחמה. וקאל א׳צא לא תא תהתמו באלדניא לא תבקא

 צצזיעה והו מנה ואכיה ורציעה פּאן אסתצעב עליה פהו לא שך צריעה ואי פאן אנחל

 כישימה נמח בדם אלאחשׂא שרנמא״י והל הו אלי טרף בול וגיאט ולו טלי מן מן טיב



 תושב וילך לו בלא חמרה ומטעמיו ונם מימיו וקץ ימיו במי מדה. ואין רגע בלי בלי פגע ואיי פגע בלא חרדה ואין תמים בלי דמים. וא'י איש משאול גפדה אבל נריצה וחן מצא אששר חטא והתורה וקדם שיר ותושבחות מקום ארון ומזבחות. לי״י




 25 פי ذלק אלאראצּין ואלממאואת ובאחתמאל אלאלךייה מן אלאנאם תבלגון ממיע




\section*{32}


 אכתלאף אלאיצואת מע אתפהק אלנייאת פי היאכל אלעבאדאחת ינקץ



 קאל אמלםייד יעקב עליו ה״״ש אם יהיה אלהים עמדי ונחן לי לחם לאבול ובנד
 10 מטיצה לבאריהא. וקאל בעץץ אלעלמא מך כאן יכשׁא אללא ויחקיה וכאן לה בית
 דאהך בעץן שערא אלערב אזהד פי אלדניא אוֹי נלת אלמנא פהנאך זהדך מן







 וקאל מא אקרב אלנדאמה למן טלב אלדניא ומא אקרב אלסלאלאמה למן תרכהאו. וקאל אכֹר אלעכוף עלי תרבייה אלאספסאם כאלעכוף עלי עבאדת 5 אלאצנאםם.

 25 אכר הלעאקל מן אעתבר בגירה קבל יציר עברה . . . 6 למא סאל ען אלדניא קאל
 5 read ע̌ 6 , 6 lacuna of about half a line.

 ארגוה מן רבי.
 5 אלצדקה" ואלצום. אעלם יא אמי ופקנא אללה ואיאך אלי רצאה אן אלעלמא קר חתוּ אלי 1 פעל אלציר פי ממיע אקאוילחם ואלעקול קד אוּבת פעל אלמערוף מע אהללח ומע גיר אהלה ליבון דהלך לאלנפוס טבהעא. וקאל בעצהם דע אלאמיל ולי

 10 על פנסהמים כי ברוב הימים תמצאנו. פמן אלעלמא מן פלצל אלצום עלי אלצדקה" ואסתדל בקול אלחכמי ק/ל וחה בגופו וחה במטונו ובברהאן אן אלנפם אוֹי אדמת אלגדה תתחוֹי בה אלחפתת אלי אלשאם ואלדם אללי כאנת קר אעדמתחא פאחרקתחמא בנורהא וגדת בה גסמהא פצאר בדֹאלך אלצום אפצללמן אלצדקה.
 15 וגניר 3 בהא עיונהם אללי קר אצלמת מן אלפקד *. וקאל אכר אוֹ צום אלגני
 אלצעיף אפצלל מן צומה לאנה יחצדק מוֹ ציק נפס וכלא אלקולין מליחי גי"דין.
 טוילה פי כתבהם ונטקת אלכתב אלמקדסה באנהא חתג׳י מן אלמות בקוי וצדקה 20 חציל ממות. וקאלו אן אלצדקה פּ אלסר אפצל מן אלצדקה פי אלעלאני"ה

 אלקולין מליחיץ צחהחין. פצדקה הלסר תחסן למן לם קט יפחש ונהחה ולא אעתאר אذדהה והו מסתור אלעריץ לא יעלמון אלגאסבה פצדרקה אלסר עליה אפצל 25 ויצדקה אלעלאניהּ למן בשף וֹהה ואעתאד אלדהא אפצל בן אעטאיה באלסר
 לֹתואבה אֹי לם יבתני בה שכבר אלנאם פבל מן מכנה אללה יסאר פי האלה






 טפיה ישתמה פלם ילתפת בה ולא אלתפת אליה פקאה לה אה אלפםּיה אלתפת


 פקאאל לה אלצאלחח אלסעאיה קביחה ולו כאנת צחיחה לאכנא נבחת ען מא וֹאלת בה פאן יך' צחיחא מקתנאך ואן יך באי באטלא עאקבנאך ואוֹ תשתחהי אֹא נקילך





 אללהם אגפר דנובי ואסתר עיובי ובלגני פי אלדארין מחבובי וקאל אכי אפר אללהם 20 אנך עאלם בדֹנובי פאפרהא ועאלם בעיובי פאסתרהא ועאלאם בחואיאיצי פאקצּיהא.



 25 אלראהב לעקאבך פבחק נביך וכתאבך אגעללי מן אחבאבך פלא חול ולא קווחה אלא בך. וקיל אן בעץ אלנאם חצרחה אלופאה וכאן מדנבא פקאל לה בעץ
 8 read ובגנצנא.

אלא מעט ואיץ מ:עם אלא צדקה שנ' טוב מעט בצדקה. במשה ר' מה כת' צרקות


 5 שערו הוא מחליף וכל שהקב״ה גותן לו נכסים ומעלים עיניו מן הצדוקה נוטליץ






 צדקות ודובר מישרים מואם בבצע מעישקות נוער ידו מתטוך בשׁחר אוטם אוט אונו





 20 מא קד עלמת חתי אמרהם אנהם קאסוה באיזה אלגי אלעבירות אלבבאר



 25 ביד לשון פהמסאכהא ען אלמלאם אופהא מן אמסאכהא מן אלטעאם. וכדאלך יצבט אלאנסאן רפליה ען משי אלי אלמוצע אללדי לא יצבלה וען מסאירה



\section*{36}

אלדניא ולם יذרֹת מנה חק אללה סב' וחק אלצעפפא ולם יצטנע מנה מערוף




 אלמעני כלמה מליחה בשר מאל אלבכיל אמא בחאדוֹ ואלא 2 בוארוֹת. וקאל






 15 תצלאון תטלבון חואיֹבם אלי אבואב אלאגנייא והם לא יצלון אלי עלי ענדכם אלי אבואבכם קאלו לגהלהם במא ענדנא ולמערפתנא במא ענרדםם. וקאל בעץ




 פי ערה מואצצע ובעל הצדדקה יזבה לה קביל פני שמינה שני אני אני בצדק אחזה פניך. וכך אבות הראשונים זכו לעולם הזה ולעוי הבא בזכות צדקה ומעישים טובים באברהם אבינו כת' כי ידעתיולמען אשר יצוה את בניו ואת בית אוּ אחריו ושיו ושמרו
 שצ' זרעו לכם לצרקה. ביעקב מה כה'קטנהי מכלהחסרים ומכל האמיואין קטנתי
 5 read פצּלת.















 אלי אהה. וקאל כי אבי ואמי עזבוני וי״ יאספני וער זקנה וישיבה מא אל אל חעצ. וקאל אלחכים פּ אלמתקי ללה ואלמתוכל עליה בנערותו מה הו אומר וקוי״ ״"

 יבייטו מנך שערה סודא קבל יקדר אללה סב' דאלך לו יגמסוהא בכל מא פּ פי

 או לחצּה אוּ יכרגוך מן בטן אמךך קבל אלוקת אלמקרר בלחצה למא קרורו עלי שי 25 מן גמיע דאלך בל אלכל פי יד הלצהאלק סבחאנה בקו אושר בידו נפש כל חי ורוח כל בשר איש. פמן חוכל באללה, כפאה ומן אסתעאן בה אעאנה. וקר קאל בעץץ



אלאשראר ועלי אוֹ קד נהאנא אלנבי ען מסאירתהם ומשאורתהם ומצאלאלתהםם בקוּ אשרי האיש אשר לא הלך בעצת רשעים. וקאל שלמה עליצי עע״ה בני אל תלך

 5 סב' מע אבינו אברהם ע״ה כקו והיתה 3 בנו בבשרכם לברית עולם פואצל פל פי





 לינפענא פּ דאר כראמתה בקו ויצויני י״ לעשוח את כל החקים האלה. כמל אלפצל אלראבע יתלוה

\section*{אלםצל אלכאמס}

פי אלתווכל עלי אללה פי אלחי״אה ואלמות ואלרחק וֹמיע אלאמור. באב 15

 בארואק כלקה מן צגיר אלי כביר מקרני רימים עד ביצי כנים ואן אלרוק אלשד
 20



 25 אן לא ישעל אחדא מן בני אסרי נארא אלא הו פרפעת אלנאר מן בין אוידיהם ועדמת ובקי ענדה אצבאח ואחר פעמדו בער לאלך בני אסר' יסרגו סרגהם מן
 .אמסאך 4 . 4 read.

עליה מן אלרדהב ואלפצּה פקאל לה אלחכים לו באן לה מא קרו מא אושלתרי בה
 שבע אלמלך עלי מן הו דונה אנמא הי גועה קד אנסדת. פקאל לה אלמלך אזיינך
 5 מא פּ אידי אלנאם אלתקוי ללה סרא וֹהררא פבכא אלמלך ואר ואנצרף ענה. וקאלו
 ק״ל כל הפורק ממנו עול תורה נותנין עליי עול מלבות ועול דרך אריאם פלוּ פטובא

ידיה סב' כקו׳ אשרי כל חוסי לו.
 10


 לכל חי רצון והוא יתברך שמו זן את העולם מקרני רמים וער ביצי בנים. ואמא 15 אלאכרה הי למסתחקיהא באלעלום אלישריפה ואלאעמשאל אלצאלחה מע תופיק אללה סב' ורחמתה ולטפה וחפצללה עלי מא ישא מן עבאדה אלצאלחין. ואמא

 פיהא ואלמהם ואוֹאעהם וֹמיע מא ינאלהם פיהא. פקד אלתלפו פיה אלעל פלמא 20 עלי ונה שתי פמנהם מן קאל אן אלבארי סב' ינעם עלי אלכאפר פי אלדוניא לחסנה קד תקדמת לה פכאפּאה בלאלך אלנעים פי אלדניא חתי לא יב יבקא לח נציב פי נעים אלאכרה ויולם אלצאלח פי אלדניא במא אוֹנב פיהא וינקלה מנהא


 עלא ולדה ויודבה עלי כרהייה מנה כקו וידעת עם לבבך כי כאו כוּ מוֹר ייסר איש



 יטלבך פאן לם תהתיה אתאך פמּא אהנא אלזי יטלבך. וקאל אלדניא יומאן יום לך ויום עליך פמא כאוֹלך אתאך ומא כאן עליך פלא תרפעה בקוחתך. וחכי


 פברה וקאל להם קד שאורת נפםי קאלת הי תמחלני 2 מן אכל אלללחם אכֹת

 צברוהא עליהא ואמהאל אלי הלמואן אליםיר פהאן פעלת כנת אלגני ואן אבת פכל
 והי יאכל טעאמא והו וקת קצרה פסאלה אן יואסיה בשים יאכלה וחקק לה



 ולו אראד אללה בך לירא לאעטיתני פּ וקת סואמי לבן מעי נפם קד קבעת מני במא תראה. וקאל בעץ הלעלמא מן כאף הללח כווף מנה אללחה בל, שי ומן לם

 עלי רגל פאצל פּלם יקום פּ וֹהה פאסתכהרוה עביד אלמלך פקאל לים אקום פי וגה עבד עבדתי פאסתקאם אלמלך וסאלה וקאל לחה כיף צח לך אני עבד עבדתך פקאל לה אלעאבד אמא עלמת אני רפצּת אלדניא אלֹי אנת ذאדמהא 52 אצתחיארא יגב אן תכון להא עבדא פעלם אלמלך אנה חכים וסאלה צחבתה ויפּיץ


 ומא שאפבל דאלך מן אבאדה אלמפסדין בצעפהם. וכדאלד חפריק אלארואק


 פאהי כא; מלוך בני אדם ומלכחם מלך דניאי מנקטע לא דואם לה ועלי אנהם לו
 ען מבאשרה אלעאלם פאחרי ואדּדר מלך אלמלוך גל גלאלה אלדי לה אלמחתל
 10 ען הן תבאשר אחד מן האללאיא ברחק או בסואה מן סאיר הלאשיא פאווֹבת
 אמטאבאק אלסמא ליסבחון בחמרה אבד אלאבדן ויעבדונה חק עבארחה


 פאוּי צח דאלד פעעמה אלכאפר פי אלדניא ושקא אלמומן למעאי טויפח ואסראר שיריפה לא יעלמהא אלא אללה גל ועז ומן אנעם עליה במערפתוה א




 אלקלם בדֹאלך. פאמא אלטאעה ללבארי תב' ותעלא ואלמעצי"ה פאלאלתחיאר
 25 ואעאנה עליה כקול אלבחאב ראה נתתי לפניך היום את החיים ואת השוב וקאל
 רחמתה ענה. וכֹאלך מן יצתאר פעל אלשר ואלמעאצי יוחתר מעצייה אללה עלי a read 4 כלה.

תמאס ואל תקוּצ בתוכחתו כי את אשר יאהב י״ יוכיח וכאב את בן ירצה וכקו איצא ופקרתי בשבט פשעםם ובננעים עונם. ומן אלעלמא מן קאל אן אלאלה געל נעמת 1 אלפאפק פּ דצר אלדני פיא לימתחןקלב אלצמאלח הל יבקא עלי צלאחה ויעלם
 5 ירא פּי ידה מן יסאר ופסחה יד וירא נפסה עלי צּד דאלך פאוֹרי בקי עלי צלאחה וקד חווכלה עלי רבה ואזתאד בה יקינה במא ענדה גבטה אסתחתק אלתלתואב


 10 סב' לעלה יתוב ויפעל אלצּיר ויכרֹ מן תלך אלנעמה חקוק אללחה סבחאנה וחקוק אלצעעפא וקד רבמא יפעל דאלך ויגעל נעמה אללה תע׳ עליה סבב 2 למעצייתה
 לעקאבה. וקר ובך אללה אלפאסקיץ עלי מתל דאלאך כקו וכסף הרביתי להם וחהב עששו לבעל וקאל ואשבע אותם וינאפו פעאקבהם בעד אלעקאב באלשריד. ומנהם




 20 מואליד פלכייה ואחכאם נגומי״ה ואמור טמאויה וחכמו באוֹ מן ולד מן אללעאלם


 אزראהא בחכמה ודברהא באראדה וחכמהא בצנעת 25 פאלכל מנה צאדרו צאליה וארד והי וסאיט בינה ובין כלקה כאלפדם אלול מלתקאת



\footnotetext{
\({ }^{1}\) read צעמהּ. 2 read
}



 5 ולאאךך לאםראר שריפה ומעאני לאיעלמהוא אלא הו הו ומן אנעם עליה בעלמהא




 דאیּמה לדאמת אראאקהם ועטאיאהם פסב' ذאלק אלכל וראואקהם וממיתהם


 15 מנסתרה ענהם פהי מן אלמעאהן ותכוונהא גואהר מלתלפה מן מן יואקית מלוונה אלי
 ואלמלח ואלֹציבב אלי מא סוי להאך מא לא יחתוי עלמה ולא ערדה אלא הו הו סבי. ובֹאלך חכבתחה פי אלנבאת ואכתלאף פנונהא ואישכהאלהא ואוראקהאה
 20 אלי אלסם ואלי אלתריאק מן אלארז אלכביר אלי אלחישייש אלסגיר3

 ואלתהא וטבאיעהא ואגלייתהא ומנאפעהא ואנואעהא אלתראבי״ה ואלמאי"ה

 וכדֹאלך צֹהור חכטתה אלבאהרה פי בני ארם עלי אכתלאף אישבאאלהם ובנייתהם
 .אלצגיר 3 . ומצזאדהא.

\section*{44}

טאעתה פאנה סבי יהמלה ויתרכה לאנה סב אגל ואר ואעלא ואשרו מן מן אן יהגר אלעבר באבה ויחרב מנה ויוֹתר מעצייתה עלי טאעתה פּיגברה עליהא תע אלאל פלה

 § הוא שיהיה ומה שנעשה הוא שיעשה ואין כל חרש תחת השמש. פכל מא יבשר בה האמנצמין ויחרדו ענה פאנה ען קדר אלבהרי סב' כאין לא יקדרון יגעלון כונה

 פעלו בי כל דרביו משפם וקאל כי אלהים שופם צדק זה וּ ישפיל וזה ירים ימית

 ימרץ אלמריצּ וישרף עלי אלהלאך ויוייסו מנה אלחאצוצרין פיקדר אללה אלמעיש



 מבור שאון מטיט היון ויקם על סלע רגלי וכתיר מן לאולך. וקאל שאער אלערב



 גיר צחיח ואלאעמאר יעיש הֹי עמר טויל והוֹי עבר קציר ואכר מקנוט \({ }^{3}\) מתרף


 זב' ותע' לא העצי אמרה ולא תפעל אלא מא רכבה פיהא פאפעאלהה מנה סב'
 4. read \(\ddagger\) מן

\section*{47}



 5 מן אלנבאת ואלחיואן ואגרא אלמא פי אלקנוואת ואלנואעיר אלישאוֹ רואנאת ואלדואליב אלמכתלפה ותרכיב אלטואחן ואלחמאמאת וסואהא ובנאת אלספן אלמחכמאת באלאלאת אלמתקנה עלי אתקן נצאםם ויקטע בהא לאוא אלבהאר ליצל בהא מקצורה בתופיק ذאלקה ובארייה והארייה באלבואכב אלמנירה ומסירה באלריאח אלמעתדלה וצלוח אלבחהר ען אלהיגאֹא פּיוצל אלי
 באלבחארר ליסתכרב מנהא אלדרר אלפאכרה ואר ואלמרֹאן וניר לאאלך וירכב
 עלי אכתלאף פנונה ואנואעה. וכדאאך מא ינפעה מן אסתכראא אלאיבק ואל ואלחב ואלפצה ואלנחאם ואלחריד ואלרצאין מ; אלמערן ואליואקית ואלאואוארר עלי


 אלذטוט וקראת אלכתב ונצם אלאשעעאר ואלאדאב ואלתפּאםיר ואנשאת אלמבאתבאת ואלבלאגאת וחפּץ אלחואריך לאלסנין לאלאנטאב ואלדוול 20 ואלקראנאת כמא אלבהאים ען מעזל מן הרדה אלצצאל אלשריפה באהמעעהא גיר



 25 בעצ'הא אלי בעץ户 חתי תך' מנהה מא קרוד, סב בחכבתה אלבאהרה אלאלאלאהי"ה




 ובאריהא ומנשייהא ומדברדה וראזקהא ובאפלהא סב ותע עלואוא פבירא.










 מקסומה עלי מצֹארייהא פיערף בהא חקאיק אלדקאיק ואלסעאדאת ואל ואלאזמאן



 וכוֹאלך מא אתאה אללה מן אלמערפה באמור אלטב ואצלאחה אלאדויה ותרכיבהא מן אלעקאקיר אלמכתלפה אלמעדנייה ואלנבאתייה ואלחיואנייה עלי אכתלאף
 אלאכל ען הלאבדאן אלנאס ואלחיואן ומא יפעלה מן אלקטע ללאעצח ובט ובאל


 5 read succiss.



 5 ווהלהם לה ובזרה פיהם וטבעהם עליה באלאבר וכמא גל ועז פי עאהם אלטביעה

 אנהם גנוד אללה סב' וסכאן אטבאק סמאואתה וכלפאיה עאלמה ומוכליה עלי אתקיאה בראיה טול אלממאן פי אלליל ואלנהאר ללאצאּאה וסלטה וסטהם וולאהם
 מאורות ברקיע השמים וקאל והיו לאותות ולמועדים ולימים ושנים וקאל את השה השמש לממשלת ביום ואת הירח לטמשלת בלילה 1 ואת הכוכבים וקאלו למשול ביו ביום
 גרש ירחים. וכדאאך ממא אפארדהם לאלקהם סב' ממא ינבת מנהא פי אלעאלם 1515 וכאצה אלשמס וחרארתהא אלדי הי סבב חיאת 2 האלעאלם באסרה מן מעארן אלי







 ועלי אנהא לא תעדא מא פווצה אליהא בארייהא סב' תע׳ ולא תקדר תער תעט
 עאלמה. וממא גאת בה אלאנבייא ע״ה פי וצפהא אנהם שבהו אלֹואב

1 read את המאור הגרול לממישלת היום ואת המאור הקטן לממשל .אלבצרייה ה




 וקאל איצא שהא אל השמי עיניכם וקאל השמים מספרים כבור אל. יום ליום
 מן לאלך טרפא ואחדא לךך תרכארה לגלאלה צנעה אלצאیנע אלחכים גל زלאלה.



 סב' וסבאן סמאואתה ומלאיכתה אלמקרבין אלואאטה בינה ובין בלוֹ כלקה 15 אלמוובלין בכלאיקה אגֹמעיץ אלמוצלין אלברכאת ואלכיריאת ואל ואלסעאדת אלי


 קהא יפתח י״ לך את אוצרו הטוב. וקאל והיה ביום ההואה נאם י״ אענה אתת
 וכֹֹאלך ורוד אלמצאיב מן אלסמא עלי מסתחקיהא חתי מחארבת 2 טיסרא



 יסבחו בחמרה קקו יודוך י״ כל מעשיך. וכוֹאלך קוּ פי מזמור הללו את יי' מן השמים מן אוולה אלי אכרה. פאוֹי דאלד פי עאלם אלטביעה עאלי

 יחמלו מעהם תמצאהלה דאלך למא עלמו אנה מווכל בתדבירחם או לבל אמוֹ
 יוא שר מלבוח פרס וקאל השר הגדול העומד על בני עמיך פכנת ענהא. E פאלמלאיכה אלתי הי ארואחהם אלמחרכה להא אלסאירה בהא חרי מא אמרהא ذאלקהא סבחאנה פכאנו יחמלו מעהם חמאתיל לאלך כמא ובכהם אלנבי וקאל ונשאתם את בין צלמיכם ואת מוכב אלחיכם ואסם אלוחל באליונאנייה

 10 אלשטס או אלקמר פּ אכר ברג אלחמל אלי אלֹתור ואלחמל הו אלגארב פהר סאירה באלעיץ ואלחס מן אלברֹא אלגארב אלי אלברי אלדי לם עאר יגרב פצחח אן מסירהא מן אלמגרב אל׳ אלמשרק ומסיר אלבואכב בצד דאלרך מן אלמשרק אלי אלמגרב פּיצבהוה בטאחונה תדור עלי אלימין ונמלה 2 פוקהא תדור עלי
 15 ומסירהא כאלק אלשי וצדדה לאלדלאלה עלי וחדאנייתה ועלי אן ליס לה בדולא
 בארן ذאלקהא ותקירוה וטאעתהא לה ואנקיאדהא לאמרה ותקריסהא לה וחסביחהא לה מתוונהה באגמאעהא אליה סאגדרד ראבעה

באزלאלח.
20

 לאלסנה. וכדאלד בעדרהא כלהא אלתפלח י״ח גיר אלאוולה פאן הי אלאם. וכדאאלך אלחורה ז כלמאת אוולהא ואכורהא ״״ב והם בראשית ולמל היד החוקה.
 הארון ובנוחה יאמר שובה. וכדאלך אוול אלשירה אלֹי אפחתח בהא אלסי"ד אלמניר מוסי כלים אללה ע׳ם ו ו״״ב האוינו יערף. וכדאלאך אוולחאת הברכה


 והמשכילים יההירו כזוהר הרקיע ומצדיקי הפוכבים 2 לעולם ועד. ואמא אלעקאב
 5 בוער בתנור והיו כל זד וכל עושה רשעה קש ולה ולט. וקאל מזי רעב ולחומי רשף

 מעלומה ומואליד מווקתה לא יקדרהא סואה גל לתנאה פה פהי באֹאמעהא לא תקדר תכאלף אמרה ולא נהיה ופי מא קד קדרה לה ומכנהא מנה מנהא וסלטהא על עלה
 לא תקדר עלי ברודה אלקמר וטבעהא ופעלהא ובאקי אלמואכב כראלאך חתי אוֹ אלذאלק סב' קדר לכל ואחד מנהא מסיר 4 גיר מסיר אלאכר מן וֹר וקת כאלקהם



 יסאל ען מא יפעל סב' כקו' ומי יאמר לו מה תעשה בל קר שהר לנא עלי חכמשתה

 20 ואלרי גבי אצעעאף דאלך אטוארא. פסב' מן הדה אלֹללקה כלקחה והלדה אלקדרוה


 אלסאלפה באפעאל אלכואכב יתאֹאירהא פעבדוהּ ובצרו להא ולם יעלמו אנהא 25 לא תסאעדהם עלי מראדהם ולא תוצל אליהם אלא מא קדרה להם עלי איריהם


\footnotetext{


}

״״ אם אחפוּן במות הרשע וכח' לא המתים יהללו יה אלא הכת' מרבר ברייעים






 במקום קדשו. ומות אלצאלח לה כאלערם ומן פצּילת 1 אלמות יא אמֹי אנה מנזל


 אלי גהנם דאר אלעקאב ולולאה למא אתסעת אלאריץ בסבאנהא ואהלהא







 עאלי ודאני ורפיע ווציע פלמא וצלו אלי מאינתה 5 דכל אל אלֹמיע מנה מנהם מן באב אלמדינה פענד דכולהם מן באב ואחר מצוּ רסל אלמלך בכל ואחד מנהם אלי

 חאששיה אלמלך. וכדאלך אלסקט מנהם באלמשאעליאן וסאסה אלדואב ואהל
 מדינתה 5 read.

52





 תחנה רנה ארישה גישה דרישה בקשה רחישה פגיעה קריאה פ
 קאל אלכתאב יצב גבולות עמים למספר בני ישראל יעני ״״ב שבט וארבע אמהות

 אלאשׁא בעדרהא פהו אחק אן יעבד מן דונהא אוֹ הו סוֹה אלכל וכאלק אלכל וראזק אלכל ומדבר אלבל ואלכל לה לה שאהד בוֹאלך ממא

 אמרי אליה אנה גואד רחום. ונרֹכד מן פצּילה אלמות מא אמכן ליכון תדכאראی לנא אר הו אלבאב אלי דאר אלאתואב.





 ובשריעתה ובאהלה נע״י באללה פהם אמות 7 באלחקיקה ואן כאנת אספסאמהם
 וקד נטק אלכתאב בֹאלאך כקוי אלחכ' הרשעים מתים בחייהם שנ' חי אני נאם


 סייבו אלבאקי״ פאדי אנעמו לכם אכרגתם אלקרעה עלייא פהֹרֹ ישקו בטני לם
 פאנצּר יא אכי מרווה הֹרי אלרגל וחםן ذלקה וסמוחתה בנפטה להולא׳ אלדי לם 5 יכונו יםתאהלו דאלך מנה. וכֹאלךך חבי אן רגל עאבר 2 אלתקאה בצדיק לה עאבד בער מדה טוילה. פסאלה ביף חאלך סירתך 3 מע אהל עצרך פקאאל לה אמא חאלתי פבבא תרא מצֹאלחתי לארבעת 4 אערא ביץ אצֹלאעי מתצֹארדה פּאן האג עליי ואחר מנהם אהלכני פאנא דאימא מלאטף לחם בתצליח אלמזאג ותלטף

 אלذלא ואלذרוֹ מנה ואלגסל ואלתנצּך. ובעד خیאך מן מקאסאת פצול אלזמאן מן הר אֹתיר ובער זמאן 6 כֹתר וחואדתה אלֹי תטרח 7 פי אליל וואלנהאר ואמראצּה ותקלבה באהלה מן חאל אלי חאל ולא ידום עלי האלה ואחרה מעע מא אקאטי מן אהל אלבגי ואלחסר ואלנמימה ואלברב ואלישרור ופסאר אלדין אוֹ 15 סמעע ذירא בתמות 8 ואסמעו שרא אדֹאעוה ואן לם יסמעו כלבו וקר כל פגי אלזמאוֹ מבאשׁרתהם ומדאכלתהם בגיר אכתיאר וצאר מחלי מעהם כקול אלישאער. ומן עגב אלדהר עלי אלמר אן ירא ערו לה מן מא מצאדרקתה בדי פֿאן אחסנת אליהם כאפוני באלישר ואוֹ לם יחסנו מנו עלי באלסלאמה וצרת
 20 אלזנא בלהי פיהי יבאפיני עלי אלאחםאן באלםו כלמא תלאפיתה לם יגני עני תלאפיהי הו אלذלק אלמרתוּת יומה פהאנא מרקעה של אלזמאן וראפיהי באברה לטיפן כללוא צח زאנב מן אלגאנב אלבי תהרת כנאפיהי. פהוֹה חאלתי ואמא סירתי מע אהל עצרי פטעהאשרהם באלחק ואלאנצאפּ ויאלעדל אחסן אלי מן אחםן 25 אלי ואםי אלי מץ הסי אלי ואבאפי אהל אלציר באלכיר ואהל אלשר באלשר




\section*{54}

בל טבקה אלי טבקתהא אללאיקה בהא פכל ואחר מן אלצּיפאן קר לחק בטבקתה



 ואת נפש אויביך יקלענה בתוך כף חקלע אי מע אלטאלחיץ אלדיץ הם פי אל אלחיאה
 אלי דאר אלדניא פיעמלון צלאחא וקר אמרה אלאנבי"א בבעצהם 1 ובחב אולאיך
 10 חכמי והוי זהיר מגחלתן שמא תכוה שנשיכתן נשיבת נהש ולחישתן לחישת שרף
 באה לעולם אלא בשבילן ואיק רעה באה אלא בשבילן פהלם בנה יא אל אלי אלי

 15 אלדריאת ואנאלנא ואיאך אופר אלסעאראת במנה וכרמה ולטפה.





 מן בעיד אבתלעו גמיע מא כאן מעהם מן אללולוי טלמא ואפוהם אלקטאש


 אלסר מן אלקטאע הלם אפירכם ואכלצכם ברוחי ולאלאך אנכם תתקדמון אלקטאע ותחצרעעוֹ אליהם באֹלא יקתלונכם דפעה ואחדה בל יצ́רבו אלקרעה










 אמרי כמא ינקאר אלממל ואלכביר 1 מע אלצבי אלסגיר 2 פתוגדרני חיניד אני


 15 ינגיניע:מבאירתהא ואסתמסבתבאלערוה אלוֹתקאב בקדרה אללה תב יותע' מולאנא
 יחישרני פי גמלתהם ואלטאלחיץ ארעולהם אלא 4 אללה אוֹ יגפר להם ואן יהדיהם
 ואעתקדת אנה עבד אללה באפצלמעיקאל ללה וכיף לאלך קאל אמא אלשיך אלבביר



 ואמא אלצאהלח מנהם פלצלאחה ולעל ניתה אלי אללה אצלחח מן ני״תה ואעתקארה 25 אפצל מן אעתקאדי ואמא אלטאלח אלעאצי פהּי האת מא אבי"ן פצּצלתי עליה
 יעלם עצּים מא יקדס עליה מן אלסיאתואנא לא יעזב עליי שייא מן לאלך פערוה


\section*{56}
 אהל עצרי. פאכבראגי 1 בהאלך ובםירחך מע אהל עציר ערך. פקאל לה אלעאבד

 מנהם מתל מא אנצפפהם בל אחסן אלי מן ח.מני 2 ואעפפו עמן צלמני. ומן קרעני



 10 באלתמויהאת ואלמחאלאת אלתי תריד האן תסתגרקני בהא מהתל דהאלך אנתּי תתשהی עלי אנואע אלמאבולאת פאוֹא טאועתהם צרת להא כאלעבד אלממלוךך.

 אלחרם תוקעני פי אבואב אלעקובאת ואלפצּיחה והתף 4 אלסתר ענד אלת הלה סב


 סב' פ׳מחכם מן עקובאת אלזנאה עלא אכתלאף טאבקאתתחם ממא יטול שרחה.
 20
 ותע' ופי אלתעטיל בה פאוֹדתהא אמור אלעאהם באל באסרה אעלאה ואספלה באנה לם יכלק נפסה ואן גירה כלקה ואה ואבדעה מן אלערם

 כללקהם פאחיאהם ואמאתהם ואננאהם ואפקרהם ופעל בהם מא שא ביף שא.

\footnotetext{
 5 read שהוה
}

ע״ס הבוטחים בי״ פהר ציון לא ימוט לעולם ישב. תם אלפצל אלה' בעון אללה סב יתלוה
אלפצל אלסאדם


 אלמטשיח ומא קד צצה אללה בה מן אלפצֹאיל עלי מן הקרמה מן אלאנביא
 ואנעאמה עלי אלעקל אלאוול באבדאעה איאה כאמלא תאמא עלי אוּפא גאיה





 ען דרֹאתהא לבער נסבתה מן אלאבדאע אלאואל כנסבה אלתלאלאתה מן אלואחרד. וכֹאאלך באקי אלרתב אלֹי אן אנתהא אלשי אלי אלפמלך ובערה עאלם אלטביעה ומא תכוון פּה בקדרה אלעויז אלחכים מן מעארן ונבאת וחיואן אלי אוֹ באֹא

 עליהם פסרא מן עאלס אלקדם אלוֹי הו עאלם אלנפם אלכלייה ממא אכתסבת

 וארחאּز באלעלום אלשריפה ואלאעמאל אלזכייה פטרת אליה תלך אלקווה
 אלذאלק סבר פינביה באלאישׁא קבל כונהא וימכנה מן פעל אלמעצואת וכרק אלעואיק וקבל אלאעיאן כל דאלך סבבא להראיה האעבאר ונמאתהם מן עאלם

\footnotetext{

}

58
יא אכי מקבול ענד אללה אכֹתר מני לא מחאלה פאפחתחסן אלעאבד. אלֹתאני




 דו אלאטרארי אצבח אליום אטירא. וקאל אלראבע אנצּרו אלי אלחלם אלנאים

 10 וצדר עננה צאמתא. וקאל אלסאבע מא באן אמן הוֹי אלגסד למא יסתקנה. וקאל




 אלאסכנדר טוא אלדניא אלעריצּה פטוא מנהא פי דריאעין. וקאל אלג' קר כנת






 ואליום לא אקדר עלי אלדנו מנך. וקי> סאל בעץ אלעלמא והו כארֹ מןבעץ

 ואלתוכל עליה סב׳ אן יעעלנא מן אלמסתבנין אליה ואלמתוכלין עליה כקול ולייה






 מן אלנחוס אלי אלסעוד ומן אלשיקא אלאלים אלי אלנעים אללסטים אלמקים
 אלעצים ואלذיר אלגםים חתי יצירו אלאמם אלדי באנו ילענוהא יתבארכו בהא 10 ואלהי כאנו יסתכדמונהא ואלֹּי באנו יעיירונהא יתסאמחונהא מא סלף

מנהם.



 פי תבוא חל בהם וואפאהם וצארו לענה פי אלשעוב וקסם 2 יקסמו בהם


 20 תבטל ולא תנסא מן אפואה אלאמה מא דאמתת אלסמאואת ואלארץ.
 אוול פאוול 4 בעו אללה סב' ולו טלבנא נדכרגמיע מא גאחת בה אלא אלאנביא

 25 ויבקא ועדה חלילה לאל מרשיע ושישי מעול. פאמא אלדליל פּי צּהור אלמשיח ע״״ 5 וכלאیץ אלאמה עלי ידיה ופי עצרה ופי דאלך קאל אלכתי אראגו ולא עתה
 \({ }^{5}\) delete

60

 אלנבי ובוֹבה פקד צלתם נפסה ובים אלמציר בפאנה אללה ברחמתה.



 אלמתקדמה פתתם חיניד נעמתה ותשמל ברכתה סב' ותלחק אלעלה במעלולהאה
 פי אוקאת אולאיך אלאובניא אלמתקדמיץ ותצהר אלעלום אלמבנונה וישמל פצּל
 וכדאהלך חשמל אלסלאמה ביץ אלמלאוקין ולא יבקא בינהם חסד ולא גבטה ולא ולא

 בגיר שהוד בל באלעדל ואלאנצאהף והלהאייד אלדי יאיידה בארייה סבי ותשמל

 אלבאמלה ואלנעם אלשאמלה ואלذיראת אלמתואתראת אלדאימה ויפּל אללה 20 טב' אלוחי עלי אול עצרה צגירהם וכבירהם. פטובא וטובא למן אלחקה ועאינה

 חע בפעל אלמעזואת אלבבאר לם יאתי מתלה נבי קבלה חתי יאול אלאמרי


 מן אלהורייה אלמקדםה ואקול אלאנביא גמיעהם עליהם אשרף אלסלאם טמא


והביאום אל מקומם והתנחלתם 1 ביה יישראל על אדמטת י", לעבדים ולשפחוחת
 פותח את קברוהיכם והעליתי אתכם מקברותיכם עמי והבאתי אתכם אל אל אדמת
 5 על כל בשׁר וניבאו בניבם ובנותיכם זקניכם חלומות יחלומון בחוריכם חויונות



 10 אכתובנה והייתי להם לאלהים והמה יהיולי לעם וקאל לא ילמדו עוד איש את את אחי
 אסלחלעוונם ולחטאתם לא אוכורעוד וכֹתיר מן אלנחמות ואלעתידות יטולישרחהא. פמנההא מא הו מעלק בשרט אלחובה כמא קאל אלסייד אלמניר ע״ה והיה כי פל יבאו עליך בל הדברים האלה הברכה והקללה והשבות אל לבביך וג' וישב י"' 15 אלהיך את שבותך ורחמך וישב וקבצך מכל העמים אیשר הריח י״ אלהיך שמה
 אלֹי הו מעלק בשרט בל הו חתם מנה סב' ותע דארך קו הקטן יהו יהיה לאלף

 20 זרועו וצדקתי היא סבכתהה. וקאלו צ״ל אם ישראל עושיץ תשובה מיד הן נגאלין ובן דוד יבוא בו ביום שנ' חיום אם בקולי תשמעו ואם לאו הקב״ה יעמיד

 אלעואיק ואלצעובאת לקול אלבתאב בצר לך ומצאוך כל הדברים האלה באהרית

25 הימים ושבת ער יי' אלהיך ושמעת בקולוי
 מועדים וחני והן עידן עירגין ופלג עידן לבעין אלפצלא וברהאן עלי להאך 1 read והתנחלום.

אשיורנו ולא קרוב דיד פוכב מיעקב וקם שבט מישי וכחדיץ פאחי מואב וקרקר כל בני שת ותמאם לאלך אלכלאם הנאלך. וקאל איצא לא יסור שבט מיהורה
 נבוותה פי סבבה והוצאפפה ולאלאחה וכון אלסלאמה בי גמיע אלמללוקין מן


 "״ ונר זאב עם כבש וג. ופי גמע אלאממה פּ וקתה קאל והיה ביום החוה יוסיף ״" שנית ידו לקנות את שארר עמו ונשא נס לגוים ואסף נדחי ישראל וג', וקאל פי
 התבוננו ויעל ביונק לפניו וכשורש מאריץ צייה.יפטי עקב דאלד קאל וחפּין ״י״ בידו יצלח, וקאל מה נאוי על ההרים רגלי טבשר משמיע שלום מבשר טוב אומר
 בל העמים 4 וראו כל אפםי ארין את ישועת אלחינו. וקאל אלה מרחוק יבואו
 ואל עמים ארים נסי והביאו בניך מרחוק וג'. וקאל והיו מלבים אומניד יושרותיהם
 הביאי בניך מרחוק ובנותי מקצה הארץ וֹתיר מן דאלך פי ספר ישעיה לאי פאצה
 20 פמן דאאך קו׳ הנה ימים באים נאם ״״ והקימוחי לרוד צמח צדיק ומלך מלך
 והיה אדירו ממנו ומשל מקרבו יצא. וקאל איצא גילי מאד בת ציון הריעי בת ירושלם הנה מלכך יבוא לך צדיק ונישע הוא עני ורוכב על חמור ועל עייר בן אחונות, וקאלפי כלאיץ אלאמה בעח ההיא אבי אתכם ובעת קבצי אחנם 25 לשם ולתהלה וג, וקאל והיה כאשר הי״תם קלחה בגוים בית ישראל ובית יהודה בן אוישיע אתכם והייתם ברכה אל תיראו חחוקנה ידיכם. וקאל ולקחתם 5 עמים



67
עליד פאסאל אלֹיץ אותי ארכתאב מן קבלד פדל אנה לם יאמרח יטאל מן בתאב
 אבראהים קלנא לחם ליס דאלך בצחחיח בל גחן מקימון עלי מלה אבאינא
 5 יצוה את בניו ואת ביתו אחריו וג' פלמא בעת אללה סב' מוסי אלבלים בתוראת בני אסרי וכאנו סת מאיה אלף פאפחרץ אללה עליחם מא אפתרץ עלי ירי יריה וואר עלי פראה"ץ אבראהים ע״ם למא אוּב אלוקת דהאך ולם יבטל שוריעה
 עדה מואצע וכאגת אלאפואת גמאעהם חלאל מן אצל שריף לעדמהם חתי לא


 בישריעה מוסי ואלתזמהא קבל בונהא כמא אפחרץ אללה עלי בני אסרי פראה" 5 תעטל בארך אלשאם ולם עהד ידללוהא פאלחמוטהא טאעה לבאריהם מתל 15 אیפטיר ואלצבז אלמונה ואלפריך וחi אלאפאביע וסואה טן אלפרהא"ן אלתי תעמל פי בלאד אלשאם פאקאמו מ׳ סנה פי אלברייה והם מומנין בהא גיר עצאמליצבהא בל חעבדהם ליומנו בהא. וכֹאֹאך אדם ונח ואבריהם. וקד קאל סב׳ פי אדם ויניחהו בגן עדן לעבדה ולשמרחה. וכדאלאך פי אברי קאל פּ פּה עקב אשר שמע אברום בקולי וישמר משמרת וגי וכמא אפתריץ עלינא סב אלפראה"
 עלי לסאן אלנבי יחקאה ע״ס פּ הלאולמוח מן קראבין ובנא אלבבית. וכדאלך
 בלם 8 וּ,

 אן 'חעבד כל קום בשריעה ויחל לכל קום שיא אחרמה עלי אלאכרין ויחרם



מן בין אלאמם לא לפצּילה סבקה לנא בל מן אנעאם אללה עלי אבאינא אבר'
 מכל העמים בי מאהבת י"' אתכם ומשמרו את השבועה אששר נשבע לאכותיכם וג'. וקאל אהבתי אתכם אמר ״י׳ ואמר במה אהבתנו וג' ואהב את יעקב.

 לעשות את החקים האלה 2 לטוב לנו כל הימים לחיותינו כהיום הזה, וקאל וצדקה תהיה לנו כי נשמר לעשות את כל החקים האלה מגיד דבריי ליעקב חקיו

 אשר לו חקים ומשפטים צדיקים וג'. ואקטם עלי לסן אנביאה ע״ם אנא ולו ולו תברינא מן שריעתה וכלפה אנה ימלכנא באלקהר כקו׳ חי אני נאם המלך ״





 אלתורייה. וקאל כיף יחכמונך וענרהם אלתורייה פיהא חכם אללה וחכי וחכם אללה 20 לא ינסא אבדא. וקאל ולן תגד לסנה אללה תחוילא והו יעני אלתוריה. פכיף נחוול



 25 מן קבלכם פדל אנה רסול אליהם לא אלדי מן קבלהם. וקאב יא אוא אהל אלכתאב לן יקבל מנכם עמלא התי תקימו אלתורייה. וקאל ואן כנת פ• שך מן מא אנמל

1 read כליראה את insert לטוב and האלה 2 between 2 לפא .ה אלחינו








 ת1 אלאנביא אלמדיונה הצ כחבהם אלצאדמה אלמנקולה אלינא מן אב וגד לבננא
 אויביהם לא מאסתים ולא געלתים קכלוחם.

 15 זאת באחנו ולא שקרעו בכריחך. יקוי אם שכחנו שם אלהינו ונפריש כפּינו לאל

 ולذלעו מלאהבהם פי אסרע הריע. פחאישה אלֹאלאק אלקאדר יתברך שמו

 בה ומוצלה אלינא פּ אלוקת אללדי קד טבק עלמה וקדרה בתקדירה וחתמה



 omitted in other readings, 5 for ועמס לבבם ימס

 12 read אויבי רבים ושוטני רבים.

\section*{70}

ואעעם יא אפּי ופקנא אללה ואיאך אלי רצלאה הן אלשעבוד אלֹיץ נחן פיה
 אלבארי פב פ' קאדם אלמואן לאבגיט באנה סיר פנאלתנא אלמצאי: ואצאבתנא אלנואיב פאבלתנה אלבלאה ואפנתנא אלעבאר כקוי ואביחתם בנו ם 5 ואכלה התבם בארץ איביכם ותלאענת בנא אלליצעוב וטאלת הלסנתהם ואמתדת אצירהם עלינא חתי צרנא בינהם לא נקדר ננטק כאלשאה בּין ירי טן ימוהת בקוי וכרחללפני גוזה נאלמה. וקאל הלשאער אלעבראני פּ וֹאלך לאלי פמה



 טפל יסומהא ורור חיאל אלמות ואלטםל ילעב. ימע דאלד באסרד מא ירתו לגא







 ללטף צעעתהם ועיביב קולהם. פמן דאלך שלמה רחמה אללה שנוחינו ספו בדלות וקלוח לאל נצפה 2 והנה בוּ ישפלוח משלו עבדים בני בנלוח 3 ה הושיעה י' יפ בי בך אוילות 4 ולמען שמך "' עשה לטובה אות י״ עד מתי קץ הפלאואת. משלנו 5 ששק ער אשר קרס 6 הפיצני לעולם 7 ומשך ותירס וגם עור ישמעאל זהרג הרס 8 תשע


 .תרס ונרס.

באלעאגלה לשרפנא ענדה כקו רק אתכם ידעתי מכל מישפחות האדמהו על כן אפקר עליכם את כל עונותיכם. ותפםיר ידעתי שרפתכם מתל וארעך בשם
 בשרב אלדוא אלמר עלי ברה מן אלצבי לאסתנואע אלכלט אלרדי מן גסממה 5 ולמערפה אלאב במצאלחה אכֹתר מן מערפה אלאבי במצאלאח נפמה. פּאב עלינא
 את אשר יאדב ״י' יוכיח. ונסאל אללה או יצעלנא ואיאח מל מן אתקיאה ומהבי אנביאה ואוציאה ואוליאה ואן יפרגֹ עלינא בוחמתה ויذתם לנא בذיר בעזחה. תם אלפצל אלסאדם יתלוה

\section*{אלםצל אלסאבע}

פי דבר אלאכרה אלתי הי אלמנתהא ואליהא אלמאוא דאר אלחה באואה








 אלי אן תכמל צורתה ותחם בנייתה ויאון אלוקת האלףי קדר אלכהאלק סב' אוֹ ינקלה

 מן נסים אלדניא ואגדייתהא אלטייבה :מלאבסהא אלח אלחסנה וסאיר נעימהא עלי

 דנייה אליחאלה גלילה ומן רתבה וצ'עה אלי רחבה רפיעה. פחיניד תחחרז בה קווה


\section*{72}
 אאמצווח מתל מצוות שבת ומילה ופםח ונדה וסאיר פא בלגת מקדרחנה עליה


 בקייה. וקד עלמת קצה ויאמר י״ יען כי גבהי בטת ציין ימא ובכהם אלנבי ומא נאלהם בעד דאלך מן אלעקאב אלשריד ואהאל דאלך אלי ذראב אלקדם ואלבלד
 בכל חטאתיה. פכיף מן הם עבאדתה מא לא יא יחצּא מן אלעבירוח ויאלמעאצי


 פם אוול אלמצל השהדת בדאלך שריעתנה וישריעתהם ולם יקדרו ען להאלך בוזה.



 אלשראב אלפלאני באלמיזאן ולא ימתלי מן אלטעאם ואלשראב והו ואו יעני אלמרי"ץ






 וכֹאאלך סמאהא חקים ומשפטים צריקים אנה לא ימהל מן תערא עליהא בקחה. וקאל ענהא עדותיך נאמנו מאד. וקאל עדות יי נאמי. וצאר ינאקשנא עליה


\section*{75}
 אלהוא ונםים אלדניא ופיה אגדיה מלתלפה אלטעום ומלאבם מלתלפת 1 אלאלאוֹ ונכאח ושראב וגטא ווטא ושמם וקמבר וכואואבב ומעארן וחיואן וגיר
 5 אליי וארוח עליי ואפתר לי מן מא דכברתם לאני פי מוֹצע לא יצל אלאי"לא חר ולא
 ועררה מקאל לגהלה בדאר אלדניא ובדה ³ פיהא ובאק ואלjאלק גל גלאלה אנמא הו אערף מנה במצאלחה פהו ינקלה מן חאלא אלי חאל


 אלעיון פצהלוהא לקלה פהמהם ענהא ותמנו אלכלוד פי דאר אלד פניא וא ולם ולם יעלמו



 מן דאבה ואטיב בא פּיהא אלנכאח והוא צב מבול מן מבול. ובאלגמלה יא אֹאי
 אלנאס אמור אלאכרה לעדרו לאן חד אלאנסאן פי אלעלום אלי מקראר מא לא לא 20 יקרר יתעדאה ולא יבלג פוקה. מתאל לאלך אוֹ אללה סב' כלק אלאנטאן מתוסט




 באלפעל ולא מתל אנפם אלבהאים בל טתוסטה מן אלחאלתין. וכדאלך באֹאעהא



אכרי מן קוי אלטביצה ממא אפאצּה 1 אליהא אלנפס אלכלי"ה יקאל להא אלחסי״ פיחטב אלברד ואלחר ואלתעב ואלאלם וילתר באלראחהו ואלגום ואלגדרא ויקלב אללה לה דאלך אלדם אלדי כאן פי אלרחם לבנא ערבא ימא ימתצה מן אלאחדי"ן לא מפרט פי אלחלאוה פימלה ולא חאמקץ ולא מאלח ולא דסם ולא פּ פיה מן סאיר
 פיפול ולא אלנקוב מנסדה פיצעב עליה אלמיץ פיקים עלי הדה אלחאלה מדו מדה אלי
 מן קוי אלנפם אלכלייה והי אלקווה אלנאטקה פינטק באלאלכלאם אוול באוול עלי
 10 וימשי עלי רגליה ויאכל וישרב וינטק ויתעלם מא אלקי אליה מן אלכתאבה



 15 אןֹ ינתהי עמרה אלי סתין. פתתחדת בה חהיניך קויוה רוחאני"ה מנבעתה אקוא אלא ואופא מן אולאיך אלקוי אלי אן תני נקלחה אלתי קדרהא אלת אלה אלחכים אלעלים



 באסרהא. פחביין כמא דכרנא אן אללה סב' ינקל אלאנטאן מן חאלה אלי חאלה מלה ארפע מנדא וא; אלאכרה אופר דאלה ואעלי דרגה ואשרחף רתבה מן אלדניא

> באטואר כֹזירה אלי גיר חד וצפה.


 פי בטן אמה ויקאל לה אי מא אחב אל פליך וקוּפך פי מוצעך 1 read אמא סעידא ואמא שקיא 2 , 2 read

אלבחאר ואצואת אלסיול גאלאמטאר גסואהא מא לא יחצא לאלך עדרא אלא מנשייהא ובהריהא ומכוונהא גל גלאלה.
 וקלה תמיזהם ענהא ואן אללה סב אנה נהאל מסתחקיהא אליהא מן עדאב


 יכלקה אללה תע' לאנה טב קאאל פי מחכם כתאבה וירא אלהים את את בל אואר


 אלאנביא עושה שללום ובורא רע אני ״י״ עושה כל אלד. פנביץ מא ערפנא


 ואלגנא ואלפקר ומא אשבבה דאאך לאלדלאלה עלי וחראניתה ועלי חכבותה אנה






 מן אפואההם לילא ונהארא ללאף מא פיה אלאנניא מן אלעט מנה ואלאטרה





\section*{76}

מתוטטה אלתרביב, פבהאטה אלבצר לא יקדר יבצר ויתבי״ אלא אלא מא מאר מרב


 5 וכדֹאךך לאיקדר יסמע משי אלנמלה ללטף להאך. וכוֹאלך אללמס לא יקדר ילמם
 לא יקדר יטלק בלמתין מעא פמא פוק וֹאלך פצלאל עלי אֹא 1 ינהק כאלחמיר
 ואלענם כאלבהא׳ם ולא אלכשב באלדידאוֹ פכל אמורה מתווסטה 2 אלחאלה 10 מעתדלה אלתרתיב.







 אלחלאוה ומרארה וחמוצה ומלוחה ודסומה וחרופה ועפוצה ותוּ ותפוהה ועדובה ולהא 20 פרוע אכרי כֹתירה לא יהציהא אלא אתללה עז ולל. וכזאלך אלמלמוסה י״ אנואע חאר ובארד ורטב ויאבס ותקיל וכפּיק וצלאבה ורכאוה וכשואונה וליונה. וכדואלך

 אלנאס מذתלפה עלי קדר לגאתהם מץ ערב ועוֹמי והנדי ופארסי וסוי דאלך.

 ואלצנוֹ ואצתבּהך אלאגראד אלארצייה ואלמעדני"ה בעצּהא בבעץץ. וחפיר 1 read ען 2 read מחוטטה.

שריפהּ ומעאני גלילה לא יחיט בהא אלא אללה תע' ומן אנעם עליה ואתהאה שי



 לינטק בּכברה ובאואמרה ונואהייה וליקרא כתאבה אלה כלי כתב בידה וינטק במא






 הרה אלשרוט פקד ונא ולאהר דאלך שרוא התי אכל אלטעואם ושרב אלישראב


 שאתל דאלך ועמד אן יחרק בהא אלאשישא וישעלהא לגיר חאגה ולה ולגיר מנפעה





 25 אהל אלדניא כמא עלמת מן קצה ירבעם בן נבט אלזי קיל פיה על כל כל חטאת ירבעם אישר חטא והחטיא את ישראל. וקאל וכל המחמטיא את חרבים חטוּ מטאת
 ומא עלי אלעאלם באסרה אیשר מן פעל דאלד בקול אלחכמי זן חרב

\section*{78}

 ותרקב אלדֹי החול מה 1 אסעאר אלבבצּאיע מן אלרכֹץ ואלגלא וחפּץ אלסלע



 מא קר אכתפו אלפקרא מן אמור אלחטאר ובגייהם ושרהם וגבטתהם לוּ מוי






 ואוליאה כקו כי את אשר יאהב ״’ יוכיח. וקאל י״ צדיק יבחן.




 אלחיואן מן אתצیאל אלתעב ואלבד ואלעמל אלמתואצל טול אלומאן ולממה


 אלארץ פיצלם צל אלארץץ עלי אלהוא ועלי אן עאר לגמיע מא דכרנאה אסראר
 5 read נור.

צבור ויוציאו את הרבים ידי חובתן ואל יבטלו מן התפּלדה ראּנו שזה שּאמרו חבט. נחמלא וקנו ראוי להיות שליח צבור מצוה מן המובחר וכמה דאפשו פוֹר למהוי גברא מליא טפי עדיף מן ינוקא אבל ודאי במקום מבטל מן קדוש וברוך וימלוך ויה ויה מוּ שמיה רבא לא מיבעיא בן יח שנה ואפּילו בן שלש עישרה שאנה ויום אחד 5 בדלא אפפשר נעשה שליח צבור דקא אמרינן זה הכלל כל מי שאינו מחויב בדכר



 10 חחתיו מי שמרצה את ישראל לאביהן שבשמים הלא צריך להיות צדיק וישי וֹר וגקי
 ברי טוביאא מושמיה דרב זה המוריד לפני התיבה שליח שהינו הנון ובל שכבן ביום
 מטפל ואין לו ויש לו יגיעה בשדרה וביתו ריקן מן העבירות זקן ופרקו נאה שפל ברך 15 ומרצה לעם מאי פרקו נאה אביי אומר שלא יצאה עליו שם רע בילדוחו השתחה כל כך הינן צריכין מדננץ עליו לא כל כל שכן שמסלקיץ אוחו אבל 1 שליח צבור סור סומה


 20 לישא וליתן בתורה אם הוא קורם מפני שקולי ערב ואינו מבין ופעמים אורים אומר דברים שלא כשורה אמ' ר'תלמיד חכם היודע לישא וליתן בתורה קודם ואם מוּ רצה הוא שיעמיד אחר תחתיו מי שקולו ערב בזמי שהו יורע שהואו שאו שאינו לא טועה ואם לאו תלטיד חכם' קודם מכל אלו למדנו שבומן שיש חון כשו בשר מוריד אותו לפני התיבה ועושי אותו שליח צבור שמרצה ביץ ישוראל לאל לאביהם שבשמים 25 ולא להבנים אחר תחתי אלא מי שיה פהוא כמותו ודאי שמעלה מעלתו ואיץ מורידין לפני התיבה שלוהי צבור נערים ״שאינן מליאי זקן שפחוּותים מבן עשרים


1 delete אבינו מבין 2 read.

באה לעולם על עיני הדין ועל המורה הלכה מן התורה שלא כהלבה חתי מן יאם

 ששלוחו של אדם כמותו. ומן אוצאהּ שליח צבור אוֹ יך' מתקוי ללה סב' עאלמא 5 פהימא מתקנא עארפא למא יתקדם בה בין ידי אללה תע'מן מנאגאה ואס ואתגפאר ימועצה ותסביח ותמגיד ותהליל ותקרים וגיר ראלך מן תפםיר אלגה 1 ומעאניהא
 לישאی וליתן בתורה ובטעמיה ובפירוישיה וברקדוקיה וצריך שיה וּה צוּ צדיק וישר ונקי בגופו מכל דופי ואם לא היה כן ועבר בגסות רוח לפני התיבה אפילו היה קולו ערב 10 עליו הכת אומ' היתה נחלתי כאריה ביער נתנה עלי בקולה על בן שנאתיה. ואמרו

 מאביהם שבשמים ואם היה בחור ויש בו כל המדות שזכרנו או זקן וביתו ריקן מן העבירה ופרקו נאה שלא יצא עליו שם רע בילדותו ואיא העם מרני מעיץ אחריץ 15 בדברים רעים הרי זה אהדוב מלמעלה ונחמד מלמטה ותפלת וֹתו נשמעת לפני כטא הבבוד ומרצה ישראל לאביהן שבשמים ויצריך שיהא אוהב 2 בדי שית שריצה הקב״ה


 20 השלום ודרבי תל' חכמ' כלחון כדי שיהא תמים לפגי י״י אלהיך וראש בל בל המדות
 צבור מא הו אוסע מן לאלך שרחא וסנצרה בתופיק אללה תע' לינתפע בלֹאלך
 קאל אלסלף אלצאדק תנו רבנן נתמלא זקנו ראוי להיות שליח צבור רד 25 אומר עד שיהם בן עשים שנה והל ולבתה כותיה ומצינו בתשובות שאלות עיר של
 ויש בה נערים לשמונה עשר ולשבע עשר ולא נתמלא זקנו מהו שיעשו שלוחת 1 read Nאוב 2 read. 2 . 2 .

ומא אשבה ראלך פתנזה סב' ען כלק אלשר ואלכדֹב ואלמחל ואלבאטל ואלזור
 עלי קום עצאה נקמה שר כקו הנני מביא רעה ומא אששבהה. פלאלך אלאנתקאם
 5 כירא להם לתמחיין סאיאתהם וכירא לסואהם יעתברון בהם ולא יפעלון מהתל אולאיך בקול אללה סב'לישראל כי את כל התועבות וג'ולא תקיא האריך ומי וג ואלגמלה 1 אן אלסאלמין יגב אן יעתברון באלמעאקבין קוֹ והנשארים ישמעו וייראו ולא יץידון עוד.
פאן קיל לם כלק אלחיאת ואלסבאע והי שר פנקול לים פי דהאלך צּ בר בל










 וימתחץץ מן ימתחץץ. פקד צח יא אכי אן ליס לאלשר אצל פי אל אלכליקה ולא ללמדב



 וקאל בחשו בי״ ויאמר לא הוא ולה חבוא על עלינו רעה ותי. וקאל למדו לשונם דבר שקר העוה נלאו וחל אלסיף בסבבה כקו ללואו


בתורה הואיל חה אינו מבין כל כך למה 1 שפעמים אומר דברים שלא כשורה או


 5 הכא דלא אפשר ודוקא מבן שלש עשרה ומעלה דקא אמרינן זה הכלל בל שאינו מחוייב ברבר איצו מוציא את הרבים ירי חובתו.

 ללה עו וגל מתקיא עאלמא פהימא עארפא למא יתקרם בה בין ידי אללה תעי 10 מן אבן עשרין סנה פצאעדא והוא שׁיורע לישא וליחן בתורה ובטעמיה ובפלוליה



 15 ללה כאיפא לה פהו יקצּי אלחואיאֹ עלי ידיה ויעטיה גרצֹה ויסעף סואלה בקול אלולי רצון יריאיויעשה.


 20 בל יצּייע אלעלם אעצם עקובה לאן j





 לא כیאל אלשר לאן לפצּה רע תפסר אלשריר כמתל קולך אדם רע שלטון רע 1 read איאך 2 . 2 read.






 כלאם מלאיא 6 עלי או לא איגבלנא אוֹ נעציה ונחכל עלי . . . 7 ועלי אנה סב' קאדר





 15 אלדאים. וקאל בעץץ אלעלמא סאדת אלנאס פי אלרניא אלאסכיא ופי אלאכרדה

 יסהחק שייא מן דהאלך אלנעים וכאן מסתהקא ללעראב אלאלאים וכאן מהלתח
 20 עצזו ואהד פלא יקדר יסתכטלה פי דאר אלדניא בלו בלאלך אלעאצי לא יקדר יקול אעידוני אלי אלדניא התי אעטל צלאחא.
 אששרף אלמוגודאת ואן אללה תב' ותע' כלק להא הוֹי אלהיכל אלשריף ואטכנהא פיה והיאה להא לגמיע אלאתה ואעצאיה פיהא 10 וגוארחה

 . מא שא \({ }^{9}\). read פיהא

\section*{84}
 סביבא מן גמלת 2 אטבאב כראב אלקדם בקוי שוטטו בחוצות ירושלים. פאן קאל קאיל מא אראד אללה כלק אלצאאלמין וקד סבק פּי עלמה אנהם יذתארו


 באנפסהם פלומהם עלי אנפסהם לא עלי אללה סב' כקוי מידכם היתה ואת

 10 ויעתברון אלנאם באחהאלהמא פילחקו באלטאיע ויתרכו אלעאצי. ומנהא לימתחן בהם עבאדה אלצאלחין פי דאר אלדניא ויא וינצדם בהם בעצהם כקוי
 אלמרה לוגוה מן אלחכמה. פמנהא ללא יקול אלקאיליץ לו לם יבאדר אללה עלי
 15 עדרהם ותדמרהם. ומנהא אֹ אבן אדם יבאדר באלאנת באקאם מן מן כצממה לאנה יכשא עליה אלמות או אלפקר או יהרב מנה אלי בלד אלור או ילֹשא עלי נפסה




 חששך לא יחשיך ממך ולילה ביום כחשכה 7 באורה. וקאל איצא וא ואומר אך חשך ישופני וגי. וקאל אם בקרקע הים משם אצוּ אוה את הנחש ונישכם. ועלי


 4 read 4 .




 5 א אשאר אלכתאב בקו דרדע אלו אנשי דור המרבר שהויו בעלי דעה 1




 א"י בו לא אכילה ולא שתיה אבל הצדיקים יושבין ועטרותיהן הראוּיהן זה נמטין

השבינה שנ' ויחזו את האל' ויאכ' וישי.



 ואלקום אלעצאה וטן עאנד אללה סב ואנביאה ואואליאה ואתקיאיאה והאדת נפסה עו טוֹיק לציראת ותרכת אלאכלאק אלרצצייה ואתבעת אלאכלאק אלרדייה אלדי




 וקאל ימששׁו חשך ולא אור. וקאל בחשך בא ובחשך ילך ובחשך שיׁמו יכוסה
 האנשים הפוּשעים בי כי תולעתם לא תמות וג׳. וקאל באיש י״ נישפם ובחרבו

1 the usual reading is ורודע זוה דור המדבר שבולו דעה


\section*{86}

אלצאהרה ואלבאטנה וצירה להא באלמדינה אלמעמורה והי באלמלך תאטר

 אֹן ינקלהא אלי דאר כראמתה פתנתקל אמא סעידה ואמא שקי"ה במא 5 אכתסבתה. פאלואגב עליהא אן תסלך פי אלאואממר אלשרעייה ותסתקל

 בחסב אלטאקה אלאנסאנייהפפסתנשקאלצוור אלקדוסיהותותלחקבאלכלייהוישרק עליהא נור ותציר באלמראיה אלמללייה פי דאר אלגנאן ואלריח ואלריהאן וֹאואר 10 אלרחמאון באלחיאה אלראימה ואלסעאדה אלתאמה אבד אלאובדין ודהר אלדאהרין מא תעצז אלאפכאר ען תצוורה ותדחל אלאוהאם ען תוהמטה לֹאלאך מא

 לחוטים בך נגד בני אדם. וקאל פי מתל זהאלך מי יעלה בהר ״יומי יקו יקום במקום 15 קדשו וגג. וקאל ״״ מי יגור באהליך מי מי ישכן בהר קרשיך הוּ הולך תמים ופועל צדק ודובו אמת בלבבו לא רגל על לשנו לא עשוה לרעהו רעה וג׳. וקאל מלך בוּ ביפיו
 כזוהר הרקיע ומצדיק׳ רבים ככוכבים לעולם. וקאל כה אמר ״י אם בדו בדרבי תלך ונתתי לך מהלבים בין העומדים האלה. ואלםייר אלמניר אלמויד משה רבינו




 25 ימים. וקאל למען ירבו ימיכם וימי בניבם והו יעני בהדֹה אלאעמאר אלטוילה אלממתדה עלי בקא אלאכֹרה. וקאל וביום פקדי ופקרתי עליהם חטאתםם. וקאל
 אלמקים או אלי אלעראב אלאלים, וכֹאלך רמוו כֹירה רמוהא להא עליה

 יערפה חק מערפתה ולא ארתیץ באישראיע אלנאמוסי"ה ואלעלום אלאלאהי״ ואלחכמה הלפלספי"ה לאוצחנה פי אלתואב ואלעקאב טא הו אדק מן הדי
 עלינה: בה ותעלמנאה מן סואנא עלי אנא קד קדמנא אנאם לם נתכלם פי הלדח אלכתאב בלמה מן אנפסנא ולא אסתנבטנא פיח מעני מן קולנא בל אלבל
 אלדין ואלדניא ואלרחמה ואלמנפרה ואלרצואן ומוהבה אלחכמה כקו' כי ״״

10 יתן חכמה טפּי דעת ותבונה.
כמל אלכתאב בעון אללה כמא

\section*{ענא בתאליפה רב נתנאל}
בירב פיומי וצ׳ל.


\section*{THE COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY PRESS}

\section*{Columbia University Oriental}

\section*{Studies}

Edited by Richard J. H. Gottheil
VOL. I. THE IMPROVEMENT OF THE MORAL QUALITIES. An Ethical Treatise of the Eleventh Century by Solomon Ibn Gabirol. Printed from an unique Arabic manuscript, together with a translation and an essay on the place of Gabirol in the history of the development of Jewish Ethics. By Stephen S. Wise, Ph.D. 8vo, cloth, pp. ix + 117. Price, \$1.25 net.
VOL. II. PARODY IN JEWISH LITERATURE. By Israel Davidson, Ph.D. 8vo, cloth. Price, \(\$ 2.75\) nei. VOL. III. OLD BABYLONIAN TEMPLE RECORDS. By Robert Julius Lau, Ph.D. 8vo, cloth, pp. xi + \(89+41\). Plates. Price, \(\$ 2.50\) net.
VOL. IV. SIDON. A Study in Oriental History. By Frederick Carl Eiselen, Ph.D. 8vo, cloth, pp. vii +172 . Price, \(\$ 1.50\) net.
VOL. V. A HISTORY OF THE CITY OF GAZA, from the Earliest Times to the Present Day. By Martin A. Meyer, Рh.D. 8 vo , cloth, pp. xiii +182 . Price, \(\$ 1.50\) net.
VOL. VI. BUSTAN AL-UKUL, OR THE GARDEN OF WISDOM. By David Levine, Ph.D. 8vo, cloth. Price, \(\$ 2.50\) net.

\section*{THE MACMILLAN COMPANY Agents}

\author{
66 FIFTH AVENUE, NEW YORK CITY
}```

